Draft 5.0 - EN 301 549 V3.1.1 (2019-nn)

Accessibility requirements for ICT products and services





**HARMONISED EUROPEAN STANDARD**

Reference

REN/HF-00 301 549

Keywords

accessibility, HF, ICT, procurement

***Important notice***

Individual copies of the present document can be downloaded from:  
[ETSI Search & Browse Standards](http://www.etsi.org/standards-search)

The present document may be made available in more than one electronic version or in print. In any case of existing or perceived difference in contents between such versions, the reference version is the Portable Document Format (PDF). In case of dispute, the reference shall be the printing on ETSI printers of the PDF version kept on a specific network drive within ETSI Secretariat.

Users of the present document should be aware that the document may be subject to revision or change of status. Information on the current status of this and other ETSI documents is available at  
[ETSI deliverable status](http://portal.etsi.org/tb/status/status.asp)

If you find errors in the present document, please send your comment to one of the following services:  
[ETSI Committee Support Staff](https://portal.etsi.org/People/CommiteeSupportStaff.aspx)

***Copyright Notification***

No part may be reproduced except as authorized by written permission.  
The copyright and the foregoing restriction extend to reproduction in all media.

© European Telecommunications Standards Institute 2018.

© Comité Européen de Normalisation 2018.

© Comité Européen de Normalisation Electrotechnique 2018.

All rights reserved.

**DECT**TM, **PLUGTESTS**TM, **UMTS**TM and the ETSI logo are trademarks of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members.  
**3GPP**TM and **LTE**™ are trademarks of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members and  
of the 3GPP Organizational Partners.  
**oneM2M** logo is protected for the benefit of its Members.  
**GSM**® and the GSM logo are trademarks registered and owned by the GSM Association.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| ***CEN***  Rue de la science, 23 B-1040 Brussels  - BELGIUM  Tel: + 32 2 550 08 11 Fax: + 32 2 550 08 19 | ***CENELEC***  Rue de la science, 23 B-1040 Brussels  - BELGIUM  Tel.: +32 2 519 68 71 Fax: +32 2 519 69 19 | ***ETSI***  650 Route des Lucioles F-06921 Sophia Antipolis Cedex - FRANCE  Tel.: +33 4 92 94 42 00 Fax: +33 4 93 65 47 16  Siret N° 348 623 562 00017 - NAF 742 C  Association à but non lucratif enregistrée à la  Sous-Préfecture de Grasse (06) N° 7803/88 |

# Contents

[Contents 3](#_Toc4061523)

[Intellectual Property Rights 8](#_Toc4061524)

[Foreword 8](#_Toc4061525)

[Modal verbs terminology 9](#_Toc4061526)

[Introduction 9](#_Toc4061527)

[1 Scope 10](#_Toc4061528)

[2 References 10](#_Toc4061529)

[2.1 Normative references 10](#_Toc4061530)

[2.2 Informative references 11](#_Toc4061531)

[3.0 Definitions and abbreviations 14](#_Toc4061532)

[3.1 Definitions 14](#_Toc4061533)

[3.2 Abbreviations 17](#_Toc4061534)

[4 Functional performance 19](#_Toc4061535)

[4.1 Meeting functional performance statements 19](#_Toc4061536)

[4.2 Functional performance statements 19](#_Toc4061537)

[4.2.1 Usage without vision 19](#_Toc4061538)

[4.2.2 Usage with limited vision 19](#_Toc4061539)

[4.2.3 Usage without perception of colour 19](#_Toc4061540)

[4.2.4 Usage without hearing 20](#_Toc4061541)

[4.2.5 Usage with limited hearing 20](#_Toc4061542)

[4.2.6 Usage with no or limited vocal capability 20](#_Toc4061543)

[4.2.7 Usage with limited manipulation or strength 20](#_Toc4061544)

[4.2.8 Usage with limited reach 20](#_Toc4061545)

[4.2.9 Minimize photosensitive seizure triggers 20](#_Toc4061546)

[4.2.10 Usage with limited cognition 21](#_Toc4061547)

[4.2.11 Privacy 21](#_Toc4061548)

[5 Generic requirements 22](#_Toc4061549)

[5.1 Closed functionality 22](#_Toc4061550)

[5.1.1 Introduction (informative) 22](#_Toc4061551)

[5.1.2 General 22](#_Toc4061552)

[5.1.3 Non-visual access 22](#_Toc4061553)

[5.1.4 Functionality closed to text enlargement 25](#_Toc4061554)

[5.1.5 Visual output for auditory information 26](#_Toc4061555)

[5.1.6 Operation without keyboard interface 26](#_Toc4061556)

[5.1.7 Access without speech 27](#_Toc4061557)

[5.2 Activation of accessibility features 27](#_Toc4061558)

[5.3 Biometrics 27](#_Toc4061559)

[5.4 Preservation of accessibility information during conversion 27](#_Toc4061560)

[5.5 Operable parts 27](#_Toc4061561)

[5.5.1 Means of operation 27](#_Toc4061562)

[5.5.2 Operable parts discernibility 27](#_Toc4061563)

[5.6 Locking or toggle controls 28](#_Toc4061564)

[5.6.1 Tactile or auditory status 28](#_Toc4061565)

[5.6.2 Visual status 28](#_Toc4061566)

[5.7 Key repeat 28](#_Toc4061567)

[5.8 Double-strike key acceptance 28](#_Toc4061568)

[5.9 Simultaneous user actions 28](#_Toc4061569)

[6 ICT with two-way voice communication 29](#_Toc4061570)

[6.1 Audio bandwidth for speech 29](#_Toc4061571)

[6.2 Real-time text (RTT) functionality 29](#_Toc4061572)

[6.2.1 RTT provision 29](#_Toc4061573)

[6.2.2 Display of RTT 30](#_Toc4061574)

[6.2.3 Interoperability 30](#_Toc4061575)

[6.2.4 RTT responsiveness 31](#_Toc4061576)

[6.3 Caller ID 31](#_Toc4061577)

[6.4 Alternatives to voice-based services 31](#_Toc4061578)

[6.5 Video communication 32](#_Toc4061579)

[6.5.1 General (informative) 32](#_Toc4061580)

[6.5.2 Resolution 32](#_Toc4061581)

[6.5.3 Frame rate 32](#_Toc4061582)

[6.5.4 Synchronization between audio and video 32](#_Toc4061583)

[6.5.5 Visual indicator of audio with video 32](#_Toc4061584)

[6.5.6 Speaker identification with video (sign language) communication 33](#_Toc4061585)

[6.6 Alternatives to video-based services 33](#_Toc4061586)

[7 ICT with video capabilities 33](#_Toc4061587)

[7.1 Caption processing technology 33](#_Toc4061588)

[7.1.1 Captioning playback 33](#_Toc4061589)

[7.1.2 Captioning synchronization 33](#_Toc4061590)

[7.1.3 Preservation of captioning 33](#_Toc4061591)

[7.1.4 Captions characteristics and personalisation 34](#_Toc4061592)

[7.1.5 Spoken subtitles 34](#_Toc4061593)

[7.2 Audio description technology 34](#_Toc4061594)

[7.2.1 Audio description playback 34](#_Toc4061595)

[7.2.2 Audio description synchronization 34](#_Toc4061596)

[7.2.3 Preservation of audio description 34](#_Toc4061597)

[7.3 User controls for captions and audio description 34](#_Toc4061598)

[8 Hardware 36](#_Toc4061599)

[8.1 General 36](#_Toc4061600)

[8.1.1 Generic requirements 36](#_Toc4061601)

[8.1.2 Standard connections 36](#_Toc4061602)

[8.1.3 Colour 36](#_Toc4061603)

[8.2 Hardware products with speech output 36](#_Toc4061604)

[8.2.1 Speech volume gain 36](#_Toc4061605)

[8.2.2 Magnetic coupling 36](#_Toc4061606)

[8.3 Stationary ICT 37](#_Toc4061607)

[8.3.0 General 37](#_Toc4061608)

[8.3.1 Forward or side reach 37](#_Toc4061609)

[8.3.2 Forward reach 37](#_Toc4061610)

[8.3.4 Clear floor or ground space 41](#_Toc4061611)

[8.3.5 Visibility 42](#_Toc4061612)

[8.3.6 Installation instructions 42](#_Toc4061613)

[8.4 Mechanically operable parts 43](#_Toc4061614)

[8.4.1 Numeric keys 43](#_Toc4061615)

[8.4.2 Operation of mechanical parts 43](#_Toc4061616)

[8.4.3 Keys, tickets and fare cards 43](#_Toc4061617)

[8.5 Tactile indication of speech mode 43](#_Toc4061618)

[9 Web 44](#_Toc4061619)

[9.0 General (informative) 44](#_Toc4061620)

[9.1 Perceivable 44](#_Toc4061621)

[9.1.1 Text alternatives 44](#_Toc4061622)

[9.1.2 Time-based media 45](#_Toc4061623)

[9.1.3 Adaptable 45](#_Toc4061624)

[9.1.4 Distinguishable 45](#_Toc4061625)

[9.2 Operable 46](#_Toc4061626)

[9.2.1 Keyboard accessible 46](#_Toc4061627)

[9.2.2 Enough time 47](#_Toc4061628)

[9.2.3 Seizures and physical reactions 47](#_Toc4061629)

[9.2.4 Navigable 47](#_Toc4061630)

[9.2.5 Input modalities 48](#_Toc4061631)

[9.3 Understandable 48](#_Toc4061632)

[9.3.1 Readable 48](#_Toc4061633)

[9.3.2 Predictable 48](#_Toc4061634)

[9.3.3 Input assistance 48](#_Toc4061635)

[9.4 Robust 49](#_Toc4061636)

[9.4.1 Compatible 49](#_Toc4061637)

[9.5 WCAG conformance requirements 49](#_Toc4061638)

[10 Non-web documents 50](#_Toc4061639)

[10.0 General (informative) 50](#_Toc4061640)

[10.1 Perceivable 50](#_Toc4061641)

[10.1.1 Text alternatives 50](#_Toc4061642)

[10.1.2 Time-based media 50](#_Toc4061643)

[10.1.3 Adaptable 51](#_Toc4061644)

[10.1.4 Distinguishable 52](#_Toc4061645)

[10.2 Operable 53](#_Toc4061646)

[10.2.1 Keyboard accessible 53](#_Toc4061647)

[10.2.2 Enough time 54](#_Toc4061648)

[10.2.3 Seizures and physical reactions 55](#_Toc4061649)

[10.2.4 Navigable 55](#_Toc4061650)

[10.2.5 Input modalities 56](#_Toc4061651)

[10.3 Understandable 57](#_Toc4061652)

[10.3.1 Readable 57](#_Toc4061653)

[10.3.2 Predictable 58](#_Toc4061654)

[10.3.3 Input assistance 58](#_Toc4061655)

[10.4 Robust 59](#_Toc4061656)

[10.4.1 Compatible 59](#_Toc4061657)

[10.5 Caption positioning 59](#_Toc4061658)

[10.6 Audio description timing 60](#_Toc4061659)

[11 Software 61](#_Toc4061660)

[11.0 General (informative) 61](#_Toc4061661)

[11.1 Perceivable 62](#_Toc4061662)

[11.1.1 Text alternatives 62](#_Toc4061663)

[11.1.2 Time-based media 62](#_Toc4061664)

[11.1.3 Adaptable 63](#_Toc4061665)

[11.1.4 Distinguishable 65](#_Toc4061666)

[11.2 Operable 66](#_Toc4061667)

[11.2.1 Keyboard accessible 67](#_Toc4061668)

[11.2.2 Enough time 67](#_Toc4061669)

[11.2.3 Seizures and physical reactions 68](#_Toc4061670)

[11.2.4 Navigable 69](#_Toc4061671)

[11.2.5 Input modalities 69](#_Toc4061672)

[11.3 Understandable 70](#_Toc4061673)

[11.3.1 Readable 70](#_Toc4061674)

[11.3.2 Predictable 71](#_Toc4061675)

[11.3.3 Input assistance 71](#_Toc4061676)

[11.4 Robust 72](#_Toc4061677)

[11.4.1 Compatible 72](#_Toc4061678)

[11.5 Interoperability with assistive technology 74](#_Toc4061679)

[11.5.1 Closed functionality 74](#_Toc4061680)

[11.5.2 Accessibility services 74](#_Toc4061681)

[11.6 Documented accessibility usage 77](#_Toc4061682)

[11.6.1 User control of accessibility features 77](#_Toc4061683)

[11.6.2 No disruption of accessibility features 77](#_Toc4061684)

[11.7 User preferences 77](#_Toc4061685)

[11.8 Authoring tools 78](#_Toc4061686)

[11.8.0 General (Informative) 78](#_Toc4061687)

[11.8.1 Content technology 78](#_Toc4061688)

[11.8.2 Accessible content creation 78](#_Toc4061689)

[11.8.3 Preservation of accessibility information in transformations 78](#_Toc4061690)

[11.8.4 Repair assistance 78](#_Toc4061691)

[11.8.5 Templates 78](#_Toc4061692)

[12 Documentation and support services 79](#_Toc4061693)

[12.1 Product documentation 79](#_Toc4061694)

[12.1.1 Accessibility and compatibility features 79](#_Toc4061695)

[12.1.2 Accessible documentation 79](#_Toc4061696)

[12.2 Support services 79](#_Toc4061697)

[12.2.1 General (informative) 79](#_Toc4061698)

[12.2.2 Information on accessibility and compatibility features 79](#_Toc4061699)

[12.2.3 Effective communication 79](#_Toc4061700)

[12.2.4 Accessible documentation 80](#_Toc4061701)

[13 ICT providing relay or emergency service access 81](#_Toc4061702)

[13.1 Relay services requirements 81](#_Toc4061703)

[13.1.1 General (informative) 81](#_Toc4061704)

[13.1.2 Text relay services 81](#_Toc4061705)

[13.1.3 Sign relay services 81](#_Toc4061706)

[13.1.4 Lip-reading relay services 81](#_Toc4061707)

[13.1.5 Captioned telephony services 81](#_Toc4061708)

[13.1.6 Speech to speech relay services 81](#_Toc4061709)

[13.2 Access to relay services 81](#_Toc4061710)

[13.3 Access to emergency services 82](#_Toc4061711)

[14 Conformance 83](#_Toc4061712)

[Annex A (informative): Relationship between the present document and the essential requirements of Directive 2016/2102 84](#_Toc4061713)

[Annex B (informative): Relationship between requirements and functional performance statements 97](#_Toc4061714)

[B.1 Relationships between clauses 5 to 13 and the functional performance statements 97](#_Toc4061715)

[B.2 Interpretation of Table B.2 105](#_Toc4061716)

[B.2.0 General 105](#_Toc4061717)

[B.2.1 Example 105](#_Toc4061718)

[Annex C (normative): Determination of conformance 107](#_Toc4061719)

[C.1 Introduction 107](#_Toc4061720)

[C.2 Empty clause 107](#_Toc4061721)

[C.3 Empty clause 107](#_Toc4061722)

[C.4 Functional performance 107](#_Toc4061723)

[C.5 Generic requirements 107](#_Toc4061724)

[C.5.1 Closed functionality 107](#_Toc4061725)

[C.5.2 Activation of accessibility features 111](#_Toc4061726)

[C.5.3 Biometrics 111](#_Toc4061727)

[C.5.4 Preservation of accessibility information during conversion 111](#_Toc4061728)

[C.5.5 Operable parts 112](#_Toc4061729)

[C.5.6 Locking or toggle controls 112](#_Toc4061730)

[C.5.7 Key repeat 112](#_Toc4061731)

[C.5.8 Double-strike key acceptance 113](#_Toc4061732)

[C.5.9 Simultaneous user actions 113](#_Toc4061733)

[C.6 ICT with two-way voice communication 113](#_Toc4061734)

[C.6.1 Audio bandwidth for speech 113](#_Toc4061735)

[C.6.2 Real-Time Text (RTT) functionality 113](#_Toc4061736)

[C.6.3 Caller ID 116](#_Toc4061737)

[C.6.4 Alternatives to voice-based services 116](#_Toc4061738)

[C.6.5 Video communication 117](#_Toc4061739)

[C.6.6 Alternatives to video-based services 118](#_Toc4061740)

[C.7 ICT with video capabilities 118](#_Toc4061741)

[C.7.1 Caption processing technology 118](#_Toc4061742)

[C.7.2 Audio description technology 119](#_Toc4061743)

[C.7.3 User controls for captions and audio description 119](#_Toc4061744)

[C.8 Hardware 119](#_Toc4061745)

[C.8.1 General 119](#_Toc4061746)

[C.8.2 Hardware products with speech output 120](#_Toc4061747)

[C.8.3 Stationary ICT 120](#_Toc4061748)

[C.8.4 Mechanically operable parts 125](#_Toc4061749)

[C.8.5 Tactile indication of speech mode 126](#_Toc4061750)

[C.9 Web 126](#_Toc4061751)

[C.9.0 General (informative) 126](#_Toc4061752)

[C.9.1 Perceivable 126](#_Toc4061753)

[C.9.2 Operable 129](#_Toc4061754)

[C.9.3 Understandable 132](#_Toc4061755)

[C.9.4 Robust 134](#_Toc4061756)

[C.9.5 WCAG 2.1 conformance requirements 134](#_Toc4061757)

[C.10 Non-web documents 134](#_Toc4061758)

[C.10.0 General (informative) 134](#_Toc4061759)

[C.10.1 Perceivable 135](#_Toc4061760)

[C.10.2 Operable 138](#_Toc4061761)

[C.10.3 Understandable 141](#_Toc4061762)

[C.10.4 Robust 142](#_Toc4061763)

[C.10.5 Caption positioning 142](#_Toc4061764)

[C.10.6 Audio description timing 142](#_Toc4061765)

[C.11 Software 143](#_Toc4061766)

[C.11.0 General 143](#_Toc4061767)

[C.11.1 Perceivable 143](#_Toc4061768)

[C.11.2 Operable 148](#_Toc4061769)

[C.11.3 Understandable 151](#_Toc4061770)

[C.11.4 Robust 153](#_Toc4061771)

[C.11.5 Interoperability with assistive technology 153](#_Toc4061772)

[C.11.6 Documented accessibility usage 158](#_Toc4061773)

[C.11.7 User preferences 158](#_Toc4061774)

[C.11.8 Authoring tools 159](#_Toc4061775)

[C.12 Documentation and support services 160](#_Toc4061776)

[C.12.1 Product documentation 160](#_Toc4061777)

[C.12.2 Support services 160](#_Toc4061778)

[C.13 ICT providing relay or emergency service access 161](#_Toc4061779)

[C.13.1 Relay service requirements 161](#_Toc4061780)

[C.13.2 Access to relay services 162](#_Toc4061781)

[C.13.3 Access to emergency services 162](#_Toc4061782)

[Annex D (informative): Going beyond EN 301 549 requirements - WCAG AAA and other resources 163](#_Toc4061783)

[D.1 WCAG 2.1 AAA Success Criteria 163](#_Toc4061784)

[D.2 Further resources for cognitive accessibility 163](#_Toc4061785)

[Annex E (informative): Guidance for users of the present document 164](#_Toc4061786)

[E.1 Introduction (informative) 164](#_Toc4061787)

[E.2 Overview 164](#_Toc4061788)

[E.3 Chapter 4 165](#_Toc4061789)

[E.4 How to use the standard 165](#_Toc4061790)

[E.4.1 Self scoping requirements 165](#_Toc4061791)

[E.4.2 Connection between requirements and user needs 165](#_Toc4061792)

[E.5 The European Web Accessibility Directive 166](#_Toc4061793)

[E.6 Annex D: Going beyond EN 301 549 requirements 166](#_Toc4061794)

[E.6.1 Annex D.1: WCAG 2.1 AAA 166](#_Toc4061795)

[E.6.2 Annex D.2: Further resources for cognitive accessibility 166](#_Toc4061796)

[History 167](#_Toc4061797)

# Intellectual Property Rights

IPRs essential or potentially essential to normative deliverables may have been declared to ETSI. The information pertaining to these essential IPRs, if any, is publicly available for **ETSI members and non-members**, and can be found in ETSI SR 000 314: *"Intellectual Property Rights (IPRs); Essential, or potentially Essential, IPRs notified to ETSI in respect of ETSI standards"*, which is available from the ETSI Secretariat. Latest updates are available on the ETSI Web server (<https://ipr.etsi.org/>).

Pursuant to the ETSI IPR Policy, no investigation, including IPR searches, has been carried out by ETSI. No guarantee can be given as to the existence of other IPRs not referenced in ETSI SR 000 314 (or the updates on the ETSI Web server) which are, or may be, or may become, essential to the present document.

Trademarks

The present document may include trademarks and/or tradenames which are asserted and/or registered by their owners. ETSI claims no ownership of these except for any which are indicated as being the property of ETSI, and conveys no right to use or reproduce any trademark and/or tradename. Mention of those trademarks in the present document does not constitute an endorsement by ETSI of products, services or organizations associated with those trademarks.

# Foreword

This Harmonised European Standard (EN) has been produced by ETSI Technical Committee Human Factors (HF), and the eAccessibility Joint Working Group (JWG) of CEN/CENELEC/ETSI.

The present document has been prepared under the Commission's standardisation request C(2017) 2585 final [i.27] to provide one voluntary means of conforming to the essential requirements of Directive 2016/2102 [i.28] on the accessibility of the websites and mobile applications of public sector bodies.

Once the present document is cited in the Official Journal of the European Union under that Directive, conformance with the normative clauses of the present document given in tables A.1 and A.2 confers, within the limits of the scope of the present document, a presumption of conformity with the corresponding essential requirements of that Directive and associated EFTA regulations.

The present document has been developed from ETSI EN 301 549 [i.29] V2.1.2 (2018-08).

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **National transposition dates** | |
| Date of adoption of this EN: | nnn |
| Date of latest announcement of this EN (doa): | 3 months after ETSI publication |
| Date of latest publication of new National Standard or endorsement of this EN (dop/e): | 6 months after doa |
| Date of withdrawal of any conflicting National Standard (dow): | 18 months after doa |

# Modal verbs terminology

In the present document "**shall**", "**shall not**", "**should**", "**should not**", "**may**", "**may not**", "**need**", "**need not**", "**will**", "**will not**", "**can**" and "**cannot**" are to be interpreted as described in clause 3.2 of the [ETSI Drafting Rules](http://portal.etsi.org/Help/editHelp!/Howtostart/ETSIDraftingRules.aspx) (Verbal forms for the expression of provisions).

"**must**" and "**must not**" are **NOT** allowed in ETSI deliverables except when used in direct citation.

# Introduction

The present document is developed in response to standardisation request M 554 from the European Commission to CEN, CENELEC and ETSI. It is a revision of the European Standard (EN) that was initially prepared in response to Phase 2 of Mandate M 376 [i.3].

The other deliverables prepared in response to Mandate M 376 were:

* ETSI TR 102 612[i.9]: "Human Factors (HF); European accessibility requirements for public procurement of products and services in the ICT domain (European Commission Mandate M 376, Phase 1)".
* ETSI TR 101 550 [i.7]: “Documents relevant to EN 301 549 "Accessibility requirements suitable for public procurement of ICT products and services in Europe"”.
* ETSI TR 101 551 [i.8]: “Guidelines on the use of accessibility award criteria suitable for public procurement of ICT products and services in Europe”
* ETSI TR 101 552 [i.30]: “Guidance for the application of conformity assessment to accessibility requirements for public procurement of ICT products and services in Europe”

NOTE 1: The present document reflects the content of the W3C WCAG 2.1 Recommendation [5].

NOTE 2: Annex E provides an overview and simple explanation of the structure of the present document, including an explanation of how it can be used. Readers who are unfamiliar with this standard are recommended to read Annex E first.

# 1 Scope

The present document specifies the functional accessibility requirements applicable to ICT products and services, together with a description of the test procedures and evaluation methodology for each accessibility requirement in a form that is suitable for use in public procurement within Europe. This standard is intended to be used with Web based technologies, non-web technologies and hybrids that use both. It covers both software and hardware as well as services. It is intended for use by both providers and procurers, but it is expected that it will also be of use to many others as well.

The relationship between the present document and the essential requirements of Directive 2016/2102 on the accessibility of the websites and mobile applications of public sector bodies [i.28] is given in Annex A.

The present document contains the necessary functional requirements and provides a reference document such that if procedures are followed by different actors, the results of testing are similar and the interpretation of those results is clear. The test descriptions and evaluation methodology included in the present document are elaborated to a level of detail compliant with ISO/IEC 17007:2009 [i.14], so that conformance testing can give conclusive results.

All clauses except those in clause 12, related to documentation and support services, are self-scoping. This means they are introduced with the phrase 'Where ICT <pre-condition>'. Conformance is achieved either when the pre-condition is true and the corresponding test (in Annex C) is passed, or when the pre-condition is false (i.e. the pre-condition is not met or not valid).

NOTE 1: Conformance issues are covered in normative clause C.1.

The inherent nature of certain situations makes it impossible to make reliable and definitive statements that accessibility requirements have been met. In those situations therefore, the requirements in the present document are not applicable:

* when the product is in a failure, repair or maintenance state where the ordinary set of input or output functions are not available;
* during those parts of start-up, shutdown, and other state transitions that can be completed without user interaction.

NOTE 2: Even in the above situations, it is best practice to apply requirements in the present document wherever it is feasible and safe to do so.

# 2 References

## 2.1 Normative references

References are specific, identified by date of publication and/or edition number or version number. Only the cited version applies.

Referenced documents which are not found to be publicly available in the expected location might be found at [ETSI References in docbox](http://docbox.etsi.org/Reference).

NOTE: While any hyperlinks included in this clause were valid at the time of publication, ETSI cannot guarantee their long term validity.

The following referenced documents are necessary for the application of the present document.

[1] ETSI ETS 300 381 (Edition 1) (December 1994): "Telephony for hearing impaired people; Inductive coupling of telephone earphones to hearing aids".

[2] ETSI ES 200 381-1 (V1.2.1) (October 2012): "Telephony for hearing impaired people; Inductive coupling of telephone earphones to hearing aids Part 1: Fixed-line speech terminals".

[3] ETSI ES 200 381-2 (V1.1.1) (October 2012): "Telephony for hearing impaired people; Inductive coupling of telephone earphones to hearing aids; Part 2: Cellular speech terminals".

[4] W3C Recommendation (December 2008) /ISO/IEC 40500:2012: "Web Content Accessibility Guidelines (WCAG) 2.0".

NOTE: Available at [WCAG 2.0](http://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG20/).

[5] W3C Recommendation (June 2018): "Web Content Accessibility Guidelines (WCAG) 2.1".

NOTE: Available at [[WCAG 2.1](http://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/).](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/)

## 2.2 Informative references

References are either specific (identified by date of publication and/or edition number or version number) or non‑specific. For specific references, only the cited version applies. For non-specific references, the latest version of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

NOTE: While any hyperlinks included in this clause were valid at the time of publication, ETSI cannot guarantee their long term validity.

The following referenced documents are not necessary for the application of the present document but they assist the user with regard to a particular subject area.

[i.1] ANSI/IEEE C63.19 (2011): "American National Standard Method of Measurement of Compatibility between Wireless Communication Devices and Hearing Aids".

[i.2] ANSI/TIA-4965: "Receive volume control requirements for digital and analogue wireline terminals".

[i.3] European Commission M 376-EN: "Standardization Mandate to CEN, CENELEC and ETSI in support of European accessibility requirements for public procurement of products and services in the ICT domain".

[i.4] ETSI EG 201 013: "Human Factors (HF); Definitions, abbreviations and symbols".

[i.5] ETSI ES 202 975: "Human Factors (HF); Requirements for relay services".

[i.6] ETSI ETS 300 767: "Human Factors (HF); Telephone Prepayment Cards; Tactile Identifier".

[i.7] ETSI CEN/CENELEC/ETSI TR 101 550: "Documents relevant to EN 301 549 "Accessibility requirements suitable for public procurement of ICT products and services in Europe"".

[i.8] ETSI CEN/CENELEC/ETSI TR 101 551: "Guidelines on the use of accessibility award criteria suitable for publicly procured ICT products and services in Europe".

[i.9] ETSI TR 102 612: "Human Factors (HF); European accessibility requirements for public procurement of products and services in the ICT domain (European Commission Mandate M 376, Phase 1)".

[i.10] ETSI TS 126 114: "Universal Mobile Telecommunications System (UMTS); LTE; IP Multimedia Subsystem (IMS); Multimedia telephony; Media handling and interaction (3GPP TS 26.114)".

[i.11] ETSI TS 122 173: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+) (GSM); Universal Mobile Telecommunications System (UMTS); LTE; IP Multimedia Core Network Subsystem (IMS) Multimedia Telephony Service and supplementary services; Stage 1 (3GPP TS 22.173)".

[i.12] ETSI TS 134 229: "Universal Mobile Telecommunications System (UMTS); LTE; Internet Protocol (IP) multimedia call control protocol based on Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) and Session Description Protocol (SDP); User Equipment (UE) conformance specification (3GPP TS 34.229)".

[i.13] IETF RFC 4103 (2005): "RTP Payload for Text Conversation".

[i.14] ISO/IEC 17007:2009: "Conformity assessment - Guidance for drafting normative documents suitable for use for conformity assessment".

[i.15] ISO 9241-11:2018: "Ergonomics of human-system interaction — Part 11: Usability: Definitions and concepts".

[i.16] ISO 9241-110:2006: "Ergonomics of human-system interaction -- Part 110: Dialogue principles".

[i.17] ISO 9241-171:2008: "Ergonomics of human-system interaction-Part 171: Guidance on software accessibility".

[i.18] ISO 26800:2011: "Ergonomics - General approach, principles and concepts".

[i.19] ISO/IEC 13066-1:2011: "Information technology - Interoperability with assistive technology (AT) - Part 1: Requirements and recommendations for interoperability".

[i.20] Recommendation ITU-T E.161 (2001): "Arrangement of digits, letters and symbols on telephones and other devices that can be used for gaining access to a telephone network".

[i.21] Recommendation ITU-T G.722 (1988): "7 kHz audio-coding within 64 kbit/s".

[i.22] Recommendation ITU-T G.722.2 (2003): "Wideband coding of speech at around 16 kbit/s using Adaptive Multi-Rate Wideband (AMR-WB)".

[i.23] Recommendation ITU-T V.18 (2000): "Operational and interworking requirements for DCEs operating in the text telephone mode".

[i.24] TIA-1083-A (2010): "Telecommunications; Telephone Terminal equipment; Handset magnetic measurement procedures and performance requirements".

[i.25] US Department of Justice: "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design".

[i.26] W3C Working Group Note 5 September 2013: "Guidance on Applying WCAG 2.0 to Non-Web Information and Communications Technologies (WCAG2ICT)".

NOTE: Available at <http://www.w3.org/TR/wcag2ict/>.

[i.27] Commission Implementing Decision of 27.4.2017 on a standardisation request to the European standardisation organisations in support of Directive (EU) 2016/2102 of the European Parliament and of the Council on the accessibility of the websites and mobile applications of public sector bodies.

[i.28] Directive (EU) 2016/2102 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 26 October 2016 on the accessibility of the websites and mobile applications of public sector bodies.

[i.29] ETSI EN 301 549 (V2.1.2) (08-2018): " Accessibility requirements for ICT products and services".

[i.30] ETSI TR 101 552: "Guidance for the application of conformity assessment to accessibility requirements for public procurement of ICT products and services in Europe".

[i.31] ISO/IEC 20071-25 (2017): “Guidance on the audio presentation of text in videos, including captions, subtitles and other on-screen text”

[i.32] ISO/IEC 20071-23 (2018): “Visual presentation of audio information (including captions and subtitles)”

[i.33] W3C Recommendation (September 2015) “Authoring Tool Accessibility Guidelines (ATAG) 2.0”

NOTE: Available at <https://www.w3.org/TR/ATAG20/>

[i.34] W3C Recommendation (September 2015) “User Agent Accessibility Guidelines (UAAG) 2.0”

NOTE: Available at <https://www.w3.org/TR/UAAG20/>

[i.35] ISO 21542 (2011): “Building construction — Accessibility and usability of the built environment”

[i.36] ISO/IEC Guide 71 (2014): “Guide for addressing accessibility in standards”

[i.37] Recommendation ITU-T T.140 (1988): "Protocol for multimedia application text conversation".

[i.38] Recommendation ITU-T F.703 (2000): "Multimedia conversational services".

# 3.0 Definitions and abbreviations

## 3.1 Definitions

For the purposes of the present document, the terms and definitions given in ETSI EG 201 013 [i.4] and the following apply:

**accessibility:** extent to which products, systems, services, environments and facilities can be used by people from a population with the widest range of user needs, characteristics and capabilities, to achieve indentified goals in identified contexts of use (from EN ISO 9241-11:2018)

NOTE 1: Context of use includes direct use or use supported by assistive technologies.

NOTE 2: The context in which the ICT is used may affect its overall accessibility. This context could include other products and services with which the ICT may interact.

**access space:** space intended to be occupied by the person, including their Assistive Technology, while they are using the product.

**assistive technology (AT):** equipment, product system, hardware, software or service that is used to increase, maintain or improve capabilities of individuals (from ISO/IEC Guide 71:2014 [i.36])

NOTE 1: Assistive technology is an umbrella term that is broader than assistive products.

NOTE 2: Assistive technology can include assistive services, and professional services needed for assessment, recommendation and provision.

NOTE 3: Where ICT does not support directly connected assistive technology, but which can be operated by a system connected over a network or other remote connection, such a separate system (with any included assistive technology) can also be considered assistive technology. This is an additional note, not included in ISO/IEC Guide 71 [i.36].

**audio description:** additional audible narrative, interleaved with the dialogue, which describes the significant aspects of the visual content of audio-visual media that cannot be understood from the main soundtrack alone

NOTE: This is also variously described using terms such as "video description" or variants such as "descriptive narration".

**authoring tool:** software that can be used to create or modify content

NOTE 1: An authoring tool may be used by a single user or multiple users working collaboratively.

NOTE 2: An authoring tool may be a single stand-alone application or be comprised of collections of applications.

NOTE 3: An authoring tool may produce content that is intended for further modification or for use by end-users.

**caption:** synchronized visual and/or text alternative for both speech and non-speech audio information needed to understand the media content (after WCAG 2.1 [5])

NOTE: This is also variously described using terms such as "subtitles" or variants such as "subtitles for the deaf and hard-of-hearing".

**closed functionality:** functionality that is limited by characteristics that prevent a user from attaching, installing or using assistive technology

**content:** information and sensory experience to be communicated to the user by means of software, including code or mark-up that defines the content's structure, presentation, and interactions (after WCAG2ICT [i.26])

NOTE: Content occurs in three places: web pages, documents and software. When content occurs in a web page or a document, a user agent is needed in order to communicate the content's information and sensory experience to the user. When content occurs in software, a separate user agent is not needed in order to communicate the content's information and sensory experience to the user - the software itself performs that function.

**context of use:** combination of users, goals and tasks, resources, and environment. (from EN ISO 9241-11:2018[i.15])

NOTE: The “environment” in a context of use includes the technical, physical, social, cultural and organizational environments.

**document:** logically distinct assembly of content (such as a file, set of files, or streamed media) that functions as a single entity rather than a collection, that is not part of software and that does not include its own user agent. (after WCAG2ICT [i.26])

NOTE 1: A document always requires a user agent to present its content to the user.

NOTE 2: Letters, e-mail messages, spreadsheets, books, pictures, presentations, and movies are examples of documents.

NOTE 3: Software configuration and storage files such as databases and virus definitions, as well as computer instruction files such as source code, batch/script files, and firmware, are examples of files that function as part of software and thus are not examples of documents. If and where software retrieves "information and sensory experience to be communicated to the user" from such files, it is just another part of the content that occurs in software and is covered by WCAG2ICT like any other parts of the software. Where such files contain one or more embedded documents, the embedded documents remain documents under this definition.

NOTE 4: A collection of files zipped together into an archive, stored within a single virtual hard drive file, or stored in a single encrypted file system file, do not constitute a single document when so collected together. The software that archives/encrypts those files or manages the contents of the virtual hard drive does not function as a user agent for the individually collected files in that collection because that software is not providing a fully functioning presentation of that content.

NOTE 5: Anything that can present its own content without involving a user agent, such as a self-playing book, is not a document but is software.

NOTE 6: A single document may be composed of multiple files such as the video content, closed caption text etc. This fact is not usually apparent to the end-user consuming the document/content.

NOTE 7: An assembly of files that represented the video, audio, captions and timing files for a movie is an example of a document.

NOTE 8: A binder file used to bind together the various exhibits for a legal case would not be a document.

**embedded:** directly included in the content that is downloaded to the user agent and its extension, and is intended to be used in rendering the web page.

NOTE: Something that is downloaded using a mechanism on the web page but is not used in rendering the page is not "embedded" in the page.

**ICT network:** technology and resources supporting the connection and operation of interconnected ICT

**Information and Communication Technology (ICT):** technology, equipment, or interconnected system or subsystem of equipment for which the principal function is the creation, conversion, duplication, automatic acquisition, storage, analysis, evaluation, manipulation, management, movement, control, display, switching, interchange, transmission, reception, or broadcast of data or information

NOTE: Examples of ICT are web pages, electronic content, telecommunications products, computers and ancillary equipment, software including mobile applications, information kiosks and transaction machines, videos, IT services, and multifunction office machines which copy, scan, and fax documents.

**mechanically operable part:** operable part that has a mechanical interface to activate, deactivate, or adjust the ICT

NOTE: Examples of mechanically operable parts include scanner covers, notebook docking stations and lids as well as physical switches and latches.

**mechanism for private listening:** auditory output designed so that only the current user can receive the sound

NOTE: Personal headsets, directional speakers and audio hoods are examples of mechanisms for private listening.

**non-text content:** content that is not a sequence of characters that can be programmatically determined or where the sequence is not expressing something in human language (after WCAG 2.1 [5])

**non-web document:** document that is not a web page, not embedded in web pages nor used in the rendering or functioning of the page

**non-web software:** software that is not a web page, not embedded in web pages nor used in the rendering or functioning of the page

**open functionality:** functionality that supports access by assistive technology

NOTE: This is the opposite of Closed Functionality.

**operable part:** component of ICT used to activate, deactivate, or adjust the ICT

NOTE 1: Operable parts can be provided in either hardware (see mechanically operable parts, above) or software. An on-screen button is an example of an operable part provided by software.

NOTE 2: Operable parts do not include parts involved only in maintenance or repair or other actions that are not expected of a typical user if the product is not malfunctioning. These actions include: clearing paper jams internal to the machine, replacing items or parts internal to the machine that may expose the end user to sharp or hot surfaces, replacing or repairing items designated by manufacturers as service or maintenance items in user documentation.

**platform software (platform):** collection of software components that runs on an underlying software or hardware layer, and that provides a set of software services to other software components that allows those applications to be isolated from the underlying software or hardware layer (after ISO/IEC 13066-1 [i.19])

NOTE: A particular software component might play the role of a platform in some situations and a client in others.

**programmatically determinable:** able to be read by software from developer-supplied data in a way that other software, including assistive technologies, can extract and present this information to users in different modalities

NOTE: WCAG 2.1 uses "determined" where this definition uses "able to be read" (to avoid ambiguity with the word "determined").

**real-time text (RTT):** form of a text conversation in point to point situations or in multipoint conferencing where the text being entered is sent in such a way that the communication is perceived by the user as being continuous.

NOTE 1: Users will perceive communication as continuous if the delay between text being created by the sender and received by the recipient is less than 500 ms. However, the actual delay will be dependent on the communication network.

NOTE 2: The creation of text will differ between systems where text is entered on a word-by-word basis (e.g. speech‑to‑text and predictive-text based systems) and systems where each character is separately generated (e.g. typing on a physical keyboard).

**satisfies a success criterion:** success criterion does not evaluate to "false" when applied to the ICT  
(after WCAG 2.1 [5])

**single user connection:** connection that consists of sound, RTT or video (or a combination of two or three of those media) that is established by a single user action

NOTE: Even though the different media may travel over different channels, and more than one piece of hardware may be involved, it appears to the user like a single connection, and is treated by any intermediate technologies (e.g. network, auto-reception) as a single connection for purposes of transfer etc.

**spoken subtitle:** synchronized audio output alternative for the closed caption information needed to understand the media content.

NOTE: This is also variously described using terms such as "audio subtitles" or "spoken caption".

**stationary ICT:** ICT that stands on the floor, or is mounted on a wall or other immovable structure, and is not intended to be moved by its user.

NOTE 1: Typically, stationary ICT rests on the ground (such as an information kiosk) or is installed in a wall (such as a machine that dispenses cash or performs other banking services).

NOTE 2: A manufacturer cannot control the height of ICT that is put on a table by someone else, but they are able to control the reach dimensions of self-contained ICT that rests on the ground and can specify the heights for installation in walls.

**terminal:** combination of hardware and/or software with which the end user directly interacts and that provides the user interface

NOTE 1: The hardware may consist of more than one device working together e.g. a mobile device and a computer.

NOTE 2: For some systems, the software that provides the user interface may reside on more than one device such as a telephone and a server.

**turn-taking:** a type of organization in conversation and discourse where participants speak one at a time in alternating turns

**user agent:** software that retrieves and presents content for users (after WCAG 2.1 [5])

NOTE 1: Software that only displays the content contained within it is treated as software and not considered to be a user agent.

NOTE 2: An example of software that is not a user agent is a calculator application that does not retrieve the calculations from outside the software to present it to a user. In this case, the calculator software is not a user agent, it is simply software with a user interface.

NOTE 3: Software that only shows a preview of content such as a thumbnail or other non-fully functioning presentation is not providing user agent functionality.

**user interface:** all components of an interactive system (software or hardware) that provide information and/or controls for the user to accomplish specific tasks with the interactive system (from ISO 9241-110 [i.16])

**user interface element:** entity of the user interface that is presented to the user by the software  
(after ISO 9241‑171 [i.17])

NOTE 1: This term is also known as "user interface component".

NOTE 2: User-interface elements can be interactive or not.

**web content:** content that belongs to a web page, and that is used in the rendering or that is intended to be used in the rendering of the web page

**web page:** non-embedded resource obtained from a single URI using HTTP plus any other resources that are used in the rendering or intended to be rendered together with it by a user agent (after WCAG 2.1 [5])

## 3.2 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document, the following abbreviations apply:

ADA Americans with Disabilities Act

ANSI American National Standards Institute

AT Assistive Technology

CIF Common Intermediate Format

CSS Cascading Style Sheets

DOM Document Object Model

EU European Union

FPS Frames Per Second

FXML XML-based user interface markup language

HTML HyperText Markup Language

HTTP HyperText Transfer Protocol

ICT Information and Communication Technology

IETF Internet Engineering Task Force

IMS IP Multimedia System

IP Internet Protocol

JWG Joint Working Group (of CEN/CENELEC/ETSI)

ODF Open Document Format

OOXML Office Open eXtensible Markup Language

PSTN Public Switched Telephone Network

QCIF Quarter Common Intermediate Format

RFC Request For Comment

RTT Real-Time Text

SC Success Criterion

SIP Session Initiation Protocol

URI Uniform Resource Identifier

USB Universal Serial Bus

VoIP Voice over IP

W3C World Wide Web Consortium

WCAG Web Content Accessibility Guidelines (of W3C)

XML eXtensible Markup Language

XUL XML User interface Language

# 4 Functional performance

## 4.1 Meeting functional performance statements

The statements set out in clause 4.2 are intended to describe the functional performance of ICT enabling people to locate, identify, and operate ICT functions, and to access the information provided, regardless of physical, cognitive or sensory abilities. Any differences in ability may be permanent, temporary or situational. The requirements in clauses 5 to 13 provide specific testable criteria for accessible ICT, corresponding to the user needs reflected in clause 4.2.

NOTE 1: The relationship between the requirements from clauses 5 to 13 and the functional performance statements is set out in Annex B.

NOTE 2: The intent of clause 4.2 is to describe the ICT performance in enabling users to access the full functionality and documentation of the product or the service with or without the use of assistive technologies.

NOTE 3: The methods of meeting the accessibility needs of users with multiple access needs will depend on the specific combination of needs. Meeting these user accessibility needs may be addressed by considering multiple clauses in clause 4.2.

NOTE 4: Several users' accessibility needs rely on ICT providing specific modes of operation. If a user is to activate, engage or switch to the mode that complies with his or her user accessibility needs, the method for activating, engaging or switching to that mode would need to comply with the same user accessibility needs.

## 4.2 Functional performance statements

### 4.2.1Usage without vision

Where ICT provides visual modes of operation, some users need ICT to provide at least one mode of operation that does not require vision.

NOTE 1: A web page or application with a well formed semantic structure can allow users without vision to identify, navigate and interact with a visual user interface.

NOTE 2: Audio and tactile user interfaces may contribute towards meeting this clause.

### 4.2.2 Usage with limited vision

Where ICT provides visual modes of operation, some users will need the ICT to provide features that enable users to make better use of their limited vision.

NOTE 1: Magnification, reduction of required field of vision and control of contrast, brightness and intensity can contribute towards meeting this clause.

NOTE 2: Where significant features of the user interface are dependent on depth perception, the provision of additional methods of distinguishing between the features may contribute towards meeting this clause.

NOTE 3: Users with limited vision may also benefit from non-visual access (see clause 4.2.1).

### 4.2.3 Usage without perception of colour

Where ICT provides visual modes of operation, some users will need the ICT to provide a visual mode of operation that does not require user perception of colour.

NOTE: Where significant features of the user interface are colour-coded, the provision of additional methods of distinguishing between the features may contribute towards meeting this clause.

### 4.2.4 Usage without hearing

Where ICT provides auditory modes of operation, some users need ICT to provide at least one mode of operation that does not require hearing.

NOTE: Visual and tactile user interfaces, including those based on sign language, may contribute towards meeting this clause.

### 4.2.5 Usage with limited hearing

Where ICT provides auditory modes of operation, some users will need the ICT to provide enhanced audio features.

NOTE 1: Enhancement of the audio clarity, reduction of background noise, providing a monaural option, increased range of volume and greater volume in the higher frequency range can contribute towards meeting this clause.

NOTE 2: The use of personal headsets and induction loops can contribute towards meeting this clause.

NOTE 3: Users with limited hearing may also benefit from non-hearing access (see clause 4.2.4).

### 4.2.6 Usage with no or limited vocal capability

Where ICT requires vocal input from users, some users will need the ICT to provide at least one mode of operation that does not require them to generate vocal output.

NOTE 1: This clause covers the alternatives to the use of orally-generated sounds, including speech, whistles, clicks, etc.

NOTE 2: Keyboard, pen or touch user interfaces may contribute towards meeting this clause.

### 4.2.7 Usage with limited manipulation or strength

Where ICT requires manual actions, some users will need the ICT to provide features that enable users to make use of the ICT through alternative actions not requiring manipulation, simultaneous action or hand strength.

NOTE 1: Examples of operations that users may not be able to perform include those that require fine motor control, path dependant gestures, pinching, twisting of the wrist, tight grasping, or simultaneous manual actions.

NOTE 2: One-handed operation, sequential key entry and speech user interfaces may contribute towards meeting this clause.

NOTE 3: Some users have limited hand strength and may not be able to achieve the level of strength to perform an operation. Alternative user interface solutions that do not require hand strength may contribute towards meeting this clause.

### 4.2.8 Usage with limited reach

Where ICT products are free-standing or installed, all the elements required for operation will need to be within reach of all users.

NOTE: Considering the needs of wheelchair users and the range of user statures in the placing of operational elements of the user interface may contribute towards meeting this clause.

### 4.2.9 Minimize photosensitive seizure triggers

Where ICT provides visual modes of operation, some users need the ICT to provide at least one mode of operation that minimizes the potential for triggering photosensitive seizures.

NOTE: Limiting the area and number of flashes per second may contribute towards meeting this clause.

### 4.2.10 Usage with limited cognition

Some users will need the ICT to provide features and/or presentation that makes it simpler and easier to understand and use.

NOTE 1: This clause is intended to include the needs of persons with limited cognitive, language and learning abilities.

NOTE 2: Adjustable timings, error indication and suggestion, and a logical focus order are examples of design features that may contribute towards meeting this clause.

### 4.2.11 Privacy

Where ICT provides features that are provided for accessibility, some users will need their privacy to be maintained when using those ICT features that are provided for accessibility.

NOTE: Enabling the connection of personal headsets for private listening, not providing a spoken version of characters being masked and enabling user control of legal, financial and personal data are examples of design features that may contribute towards meeting this clause.

# 5 Generic requirements

## 5.1 Closed functionality

### 5.1.1 Introduction (informative)

ICT has closed functionality for many reasons, including design or policy. Some of the functionality of products can be closed because the product is self-contained and users are precluded from adding peripherals or software in order to access that functionality.

ICT may have closed functionality in practice even though the ICT was not designed, developed or supplied to be closed.

Computers that do not allow end-users to adjust settings or install software are functionally closed.

### 5.1.2 General

#### 5.1.2.1 Closed functionality

Where ICT has closed functionality, it shall meet the requirements set out in clauses 5.2 to 13, as applicable.

NOTE 1: ICT may close some, but not all, of its functionalities. Only the closed functionalities have to conform to the requirements of clause 5.1.

NOTE 2: The provisions within this clause are requirements for the closed functionality of ICT that replace those requirements in clauses 5.2 to 13 that specifically state that they do not apply to closed functionality. This may be because they relate to compatibility with assistive technology or to the ability for the user to adjust system accessibility settings in products with closed functionality (e.g. products that prevent access to the system settings control panel).

#### 5.1.2.2 Assistive technology

Where ICT has closed functionality, that closed functionality shall be operable without requiring the user to attach, connect or install assistive technology and shall conform to the generic requirements of clauses 5.1.3 to 5.1.6 as applicable. Personal headsets and induction loops shall not be classed as assistive technology for the purpose of this clause.

### 5.1.3 Non-visual access

#### 5.1.3.1 Audio output of visual information

Where visual information is needed to enable the use of those functions of ICT that are closed to assistive technologies for screen reading, ICT shall provide at least one mode of operation using non-visual access to enable the use of those functions.

NOTE 1: Non-visual access may be in an audio form, including speech, or a tactile form such as braille for deaf-blind users.

NOTE 2: The visual information needed to enable use of some functions may include operating instructions and orientation, transaction prompts, user input verification, error messages and non-text content.

#### 5.1.3.2 Auditory output delivery including speech

Where auditory output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality, the auditory output shall be delivered:

1. either directly by a mechanism included in or provided with the ICT; or
2. by a personal headset that can be connected through a 3,5 mm audio jack, or an industry standard connection, without requiring the use of vision.

NOTE 1: Mechanisms included in or provided with ICT may be, but are not limited to, a loudspeaker, a built-in handset/headset, or other industry standard coupled peripheral.

NOTE 2: An industry standard connection could be a wireless connection.

NOTE 3: Some users may benefit from the provision of an inductive loop.

#### 5.1.3.3 Auditory output correlation

Where auditory output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality, and where information is displayed on the screen, the ICT should provide auditory information that allows the user to correlate the audio with the information displayed on the screen.

NOTE 1: Many people who are legally blind still have visual ability, and use aspects of the visual display even if it cannot be fully comprehended. An audio alternative that is both complete and complementary includes all visual information such as focus or highlighting, so that the audio can be correlated with information that is visible on the screen at any point in time.

NOTE 2: Examples of auditory information that allows the user to correlate the audio with the information displayed on the screen include structure and relationships conveyed through presentation.

#### 5.1.3.4 Speech output user control

Where speech output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality, the speech output shall be capable of being interrupted and repeated when requested by the user, where permitted by security requirements.

NOTE 1: It is best practice to allow the user to pause speech output rather than just allowing them to interrupt it.

NOTE 2: It is best practice to allow the user to repeat only the most recent portion rather than requiring play to start from the beginning.

#### 5.1.3.5 Speech output automatic interruption

Where speech output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality, the ICT shall interrupt current speech output when a user action occurs and when new speech output begins.

NOTE: Where it is essential that the user hears the entire message, e.g. a safety instruction or warning, the ICT may need to block all user action so that speech is not interrupted.

#### 5.1.3.6 Speech output for non-text content

Where ICT presents non-text content, the alternative for non-text content shall be presented to users via speech output unless the non-text content is pure decoration or is used only for visual formatting. The speech output for non-text content shall follow the guidance for "text alternative" described in WCAG 2.1 [5] Success Criterion 1.1.1.

#### 5.1.3.7 Speech output for video information

Where pre-recorded video content is needed to enable the use of closed functions of ICT and where speech output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality, the speech output shall present equivalent information for the pre‑recorded video content.

NOTE: This speech output can take the form of an audio description or an auditory transcript of the video content.

#### 5.1.3.8 Masked entry

Where auditory output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality, and the characters displayed are masking characters, the auditory output shall not be a spoken version of the characters entered unless the auditory output is known to be delivered only to a mechanism for private listening, or the user explicitly chooses to allow non‑private auditory output.

NOTE 1: Masking characters are usually displayed for security purposes and include, but are not limited to asterisks representing personal identification numbers.

NOTE 2: Unmasked character output might be preferred when closed functionality is used, for example, in the privacy of the user's home. A warning highlighting privacy concerns might be appropriate to ensure that the user has made an informed choice.

#### 5.1.3.9 Private access to personal data

Where auditory output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality, and the output contains data that is considered to be private according to the applicable privacy policy, the corresponding auditory output shall only be delivered through a mechanism for private listening that can be connected without requiring the use of vision, or through any other mechanism explicitly chosen by the user.

NOTE 1: This requirement does not apply in cases where data is not defined as being private according to the applicable privacy policy or where there is no applicable privacy policy.

NOTE 2: Non-private output might be preferred when closed functionality is used, for example, in the privacy of the user's home. A warning highlighting privacy concerns might be appropriate to ensure that the user has made an informed choice.

#### 5.1.3.10 Non-interfering audio output

Where auditory output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality, the ICT shall not automatically play, at the same time, any interfering audible output that lasts longer than three seconds.

#### 5.1.3.11 Private listening volume

Where auditory output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality and is delivered through a mechanism for private listening, ICT shall provide at least one non-visual mode of operation for controlling the volume.

#### 5.1.3.12 Speaker volume

Where auditory output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality and is delivered through speakers on ICT, a non-visual incremental volume control shall be provided with output amplification up to a level of at least 65 dBA (-29 dBPaA).

NOTE: For noisy environments, 65 dBA may not be sufficient.

#### 5.1.3.13 Volume reset

Where auditory output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality, a function that resets the volume to be at a level of 65 dBA or less after every use, shall be provided, unless the ICT is dedicated to a single user.

NOTE: A feature to disable the volume reset function may be provided in order to enable the single-user exception to be met.

#### 5.1.3.14 Spoken languages

Where speech output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality, speech output shall be in the same human language as the displayed content provided, except:

1. for proper names, technical terms, words of indeterminate language, and words or phrases that have become part of the vernacular of the immediately surrounding text;
2. where the content is generated externally and not under the control of the ICT vendor, clause 5.1.3.14 shall not be required to apply for languages not supported by the ICT's speech synthesizer;
3. for displayed languages that cannot be selected using non-visual access;
4. where the user explicitly selects a speech language that is different from the language of the displayed content.

#### 5.1.3.15 Non-visual error identification

Where speech output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality and an input error is automatically detected, speech output shall identify and describe the item that is in error.

#### 5.1.3.16 Receipts, tickets, and transactional outputs

Where ICT is closed to visual access and provides receipts, tickets or other outputs as a result of a self-service transaction, speech output shall be provided which shall include all information necessary to complete or verify the transaction. In the case of ticketing machines, printed copies of itineraries and maps shall not be required to be audible.

NOTE: The speech output may be provided by any element of the total ICT system.

### 5.1.4 Functionality closed to text enlargement

Where any functionality of ICT is closed to the text enlargement features of platform or assistive technology, the ICT shall provide a mode of operation where the text and images of text necessary for all functionality is displayed in such a way that a non-accented capital "H" subtends an angle of at least 0,7 degrees at a viewing distance specified by the supplier.

The subtended angle, in degrees, may be calculated from:

Ψ = (180 x H) / (π x D)

Where:

* ψ is the subtended angle in degrees
* H is the height of the text
* D is the viewing distance
* D and H are expressed in the same units

NOTE 1: The intent is to provide a mode of operation where text is large enough to be used by most users with low vision.

NOTE 2: Table 5.1 and Figure 1 illustrate the relationship between the maximum viewing distance and minimum character height at the specified minimum subtended angle.

Table 5.1: Relationship between maximum design viewing distance and  
minimum character height at the limit of subtended angle

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Minimum subtended angle | Maximum design viewing distance | Minimum character height |
| 0,7 degrees | 100 mm | 1,2 mm |
| 200 mm | 2,4 mm |
| 250 mm | 3,1 mm |
| 300 mm | 3,7 mm |
| 350 mm | 4,3 mm |
| 400 mm | 4,9 mm |
| 450 mm | 5,5 mm |
| 500 mm | 6,1 mm |
| 550 mm | 6,7 mm |
| 600 mm | 7,3 mm |



Figure 1: Relationship between minimum character height and maximum design viewing distance

### 5.1.5 Visual output for auditory information

Where auditory information is needed to enable the use of closed functions of ICT, the ICT shall provide visual information that is equivalent to the auditory output.

NOTE: This visual information can take the form of captions or text transcripts.

### 5.1.6 Operation without keyboard interface

#### 5.1.6.1 Closed functionality

Where ICT functionality is closed to keyboards or keyboard interfaces, all functionality shall be operable without vision as required by clause 5.1.3.

#### 5.1.6.2 Input focus

Where ICT functionality is closed to keyboards or keyboard interfaces and where input focus can be moved to a user interface element, it shall be possible to move the input focus away from that element using the same mechanism, in order to avoid trapping the input focus.

### 5.1.7 Access without speech

Where speech is needed to operate closed functions of ICT, the ICT shall provide at least one mode of operation using an alternative input mechanism that does not require speech.

## 5.2 Activation of accessibility features

Where ICT has documented accessibility features, it shall be possible to activate those documented accessibility features that are required to meet a specific need without relying on a method that does not support that need.

## 5.3 Biometrics

Where ICT uses biological characteristics, it shall not rely on the use of a particular biological characteristic as the only means of user identification or for control of ICT.

NOTE 1: Alternative means of user identification or for control of ICT could be non-biometric or biometric.

NOTE 2: Biometric methods based on dissimilar biological characteristics increase the likelihood that individuals with disabilities possess at least one of the specified biological characteristics. Examples of dissimilar biological characteristics are fingerprints, eye retinal patterns, voice, and face.

## 5.4 Preservation of accessibility information during conversion

Where ICT converts information or communication it shall preserve all documented non-proprietary information that is provided for accessibility, to the extent that such information can be contained in or supported by the destination format.

## 5.5 Operable parts

### 5.5.1 Means of operation

Where ICT has operable parts that require grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist to operate, an accessible alternative means of operation that does not require these actions shall be provided.

### 5.5.2 Operable parts discernibility

Where ICT has operable parts, it shall provide a means to discern each operable part, without requiring vision and without performing the action associated with the operable part.

NOTE: One way of meeting this requirement is by making the operable parts tactilely discernible.

## 5.6 Locking or toggle controls

### 5.6.1 Tactile or auditory status

Where ICT has a locking or toggle control and the status of that control is visually presented to the user, the ICT shall provide at least one mode of operation where the status of the control can be determined either through touch or sound without operating the control.

NOTE 1: Locking or toggle controls are those controls that can only have two or three states and that keep their state while being used.

NOTE 2: An example of a locking or toggle control is the "Caps Lock" key found on most keyboards. Another example is the volume button on a pay telephone, which can be set at normal, loud, or extra loud volume.

### 5.6.2 Visual status

Where ICT has a locking or toggle control and the status of the control is non-visually presented to the user, the ICT shall provide at least one mode of operation where the status of the control can be visually determined when the control is presented.

NOTE 1: Locking or toggle controls are those controls that can only have two or three states and that keep their state while being used.

NOTE 2: An example of a locking or toggle control is the "Caps Lock" key found on most keyboards. An example of making the status of a control determinable is a visual status indicator on a keyboard.

## 5.7 Key repeat

Where ICT has a key repeat function that cannot be turned off:

1. the delay before the key repeat shall be adjustable to at least 2 seconds; and
2. the key repeat rate shall be adjustable down to one character per 2 seconds.

## 5.8 Double-strike key acceptance

Where ICT has a keyboard or keypad, the delay after any keystroke, during which an additional key-press will not be accepted if it is identical to the previous keystroke, shall be adjustable up to at least 0,5 seconds.

## 5.9 Simultaneous user actions

Where ICT uses simultaneous user actions for its operation, such ICT shall provide at least one mode of operation that does not require simultaneous user actions to operate the ICT.

NOTE: Having to use both hands to open the lid of a laptop, having to press two or more keys at the same time or having to touch a surface with more than one finger are examples of simultaneous user actions.

# 6 ICT with two-way voice communication

## 6.1 Audio bandwidth for speech

Where ICT provides two-way voice communication, in order to provide good audio quality, that ICT shall be able to encode and decode two-way voice communication with a frequency range with an upper limit of at least 7 000 Hz.

NOTE 1: For the purposes of interoperability, support of Recommendation ITU-T G.722 [i.21] is widely used.

NOTE 2: Where codec negotiation is implemented, other standardized codecs such as Recommendation ITU‑T G.722.2 [i.22] are sometimes used so as to avoid transcoding.

## 6.2 Real-time text (RTT) functionality

### 6.2.1 RTT provision

#### 6.2.1.1 RTT communication

Where ICT is in a mode that provides a means for two-way voice communication, the ICT shall provide a means for two-way RTT communication, except where this would require design changes to add input or output hardware to the ICT.

NOTE 1: This requirement includes those products which do not have physical display or text entry capabilities but have the capability to connect to devices that do have such capabilities. It also includes intermediate ICT between the endpoints of the communication.

NOTE 2: There is no requirement to add: a hardware display, a hardware keyboard, or hardware to support the ability to connect to a display or keyboard, wired or wirelessly, if this hardware would not normally be provided.

NOTE 3: For the purposes of interoperability, support of Recommendation ITU-T T140 [i.37] is widely used.

#### 6.2.1.2 Concurrent voice and text

Where ICT provides a means for two-way voice communication and for users to communicate by RTT, it shall allow concurrent voice and text through a single user connection.

NOTE 1: With many-party communication, as in a conference system, it is allowed (but not required or necessarily recommended) that RTT be handled in a single display field and that “turn-taking” be necessary to avoid confusion (in the same way that turn-taking is required for those presenting/talking with voice).

NOTE 2: Best practice is for hand-raising for voice users and RTT users to be handled in the same way, so that voice and RTT users are in the same queue.

NOTE 3: With a many-party conference system that has chat as one of its features – the RTT (like the voice) would typically be separate from the chat so that RTT use does not interfere with chat (i.e. people can be messaging in the chat field while the person is presenting/talking with RTT -- in the same manner that people message using the chat feature while people are talking with voice). RTT users would then use RTT for presenting and use the Chat feature to message while others are presenting (via Voice or RTT).

NOTE 4: The availability of voice and RTT running concurrently (and separately from chat) can also allow the RTT field to support text captioning when someone is speaking (and it is therefore not being used for RTT since it is not the RTT users turn to speak).

NOTE 5: Where both server-side software and local hardware and software are required to provide voice communication, where neither part can support voice communication without the other and are sold as a unit for the voice communication function, the local and server-side components are considered a single product.

### 6.2.2 Display of RTT

#### 6.2.2.1 Visually distinguishable display

Where ICT has RTT send and receive capabilities, displayed sent text shall be visually differentiated from, and separated from, received text.

NOTE: The ability of the user to choose between having the send and receive text be displayed in one field or two allows users to display RTT in a form that works best for them. For Braille users, taking turns would allow the text to appear in the sequential way that they need.

#### 6.2.2.2 Programmatically determinable send and receive direction

Where ICT has RTT send and receive capabilities, the send/receive direction of transmitted text shall be programmatically determinable, unless the RTT is implemented as closed functionality.

NOTE: This enables screen readers to distinguish between incoming text and outgoing text when used with RTT functionality.

#### 6.2.2.3 Speaker identification

Where ICT has RTT capabilities, and provides speaker identification for voice, the ICT shall provide speaker identification for RTT.

NOTE: Without this, both voice and RTT participants do not know who is communicating in RTT.

#### 6.2.2.4 Visual indicator of Audio with RTT

Where ICT provides two-way voice communication, and has RTT capabilities, the ICT shall provide a real time visual indicator of audio activity.

NOTE 1: The visual indicator may be a simple visual dot or LED, or other type of on/off indicator, that flickers to reflect audio activity.

NOTE 2: Without this indication a person who lacks the ability to hear does not know when someone is talking.

### 6.2.3 Interoperability

Where ICT with RTT functionality interoperates with other ICT with RTT functionality (as required by clause 6.2.1.1) they shall support the applicable RTT interoperability mechanisms described below:

1. ICT interoperating over the Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN), with other ICT that directly connects to the PSTN as described in Recommendation ITU-T V.18 [i.23] or any of its annexes for text telephony signals at the PSTN interface;
2. ICT interoperating with other ICT using VOIP with Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) and using RTT that conforms to IETF RFC 4103 [i.13]. For ICT interoperating with other ICT using the IP Multimedia Sub-System (IMS) to implement VOIP, the set of protocols specified in ETSI TS 126 114 [i.10], ETSI TS 122 173 [i.11] and ETSI TS 134 229 [i.12] describe how RFC 4103 would apply;
3. ICT interoperating with other ICT using technologies other than a or b, above, conform to a relevant and applicable common specification for RTT exchange that is published and available for the environments in which they will be operating. This common specification shall include a method for indicating loss or corruption of characters.
4. ICT interoperating with other ICT using a standard for RTT that has been introduced for use in any of the above environments, and is supported by all of the other active ICT that support voice and RTT in that environment.

NOTE 1: In practice, new standards are introduced as an alternative codec/protocol that is supported alongside the existing common standard and used when all end-to-end components support it while technology development, combined with other reasons including societal development and cost efficiency, may make others become obsolete.

NOTE 2: Where multiple technologies are used to provide voice communication, multiple interoperability mechanisms may be needed to ensure that all users are able to use RTT.

EXAMPLE: A conferencing system that supports voice communication through an internet connection might provide RTT over an internet connection using a proprietary RTT method (option c). However, regardless of whether the RTT method is proprietary or non-proprietary, if the conferencing system also offers telephony communication it will also need to support options a or b to ensure that RTT is supported over the telephony connection.

### 6.2.4 RTT responsiveness

Where ICT utilises RTT input, that RTT input shall be transmitted to the ICT network or platform on which the ICT runs within 500 ms of the time that the smallest reliably composed unit of text entry is available to the ICT for transmission. Delays due to platform or network performance shall not be included in the 500 ms limit.

NOTE 1: For character by character input, the “smallest reliably composed unit of text entry” would be a character. For word prediction it would be a word. For some voice recognition systems – the text may not exit the recognition software until an entire word (or phrase) has been spoken. In this case, the smallest reliably composed unit of text entry available to the ICT would be the word (or phrase).

NOTE 2: The 500 ms limit allows buffering of characters for this period before transmission so character by character transmission is not required unless the characters are generated more slowly than 1 per 500 msec.

NOTE 3: A delay of 300 ms, or less, produces a better impression of flow to the user.

## 6.3 Caller ID

Where ICT provides caller identification or similar telecommunications functions, the caller identification and similar telecommunications functions shall be available in text form as well as being programmatically determinable, unless the functionality is closed.

## 6.4 Alternatives to voice-based services

Where ICT provides real-time voice-based communication and also provides voice mail, auto-attendant, or interactive voice response facilities, the ICT shall offer users a means to access the information and carry out the tasks provided by the ICT without the use of hearing or speech.

NOTE 1: Tasks that involve both operating the interface and perceiving the information would require that both the interface and information be accessible without use of speech or hearing.

NOTE 2: Solutions capable of handling audio, RTT and video media could satisfy the above requirement.

## 6.5 Video communication

### 6.5.1 General (informative)

Clause 6.5 (Video communications) provides performance requirements that support users who communicate using sign language and lip-reading. For these users, good usability is achieved with Quarter Video Graphics Array (QVGA, 320 x 240) resolution, a frame rate of 20 frames per second and over, with a time difference between speech audio and video that does not exceed 100 ms.

Increasing the resolution and frame rate further improves both sign language (esp finger spelling) and lip reading, with frame rate being more important than resolution.

Time differences between audio and video (asynchronicity) can have a great impact on lip reading - with video that lags behind audio having greater negative effect.

End-to-end latency can be a problem in video (sign) communication. Overall delay values below 0,4 s are preferred, with an increase in preference down to 0,1 s. Overall delay depends on multiple factors, including e.g. network delay and video processing. For this reason a testable requirement on minimum values for overall delay cannot be produced.

NOTE: ITU-T Recommendation F.703 [i.38] defines and gives requirements for Total Conversation that relate to the integration of audio, RTT and video in a single user connection.

### 6.5.2 Resolution

Where ICT that provides two-way voice communication includes real-time video functionality, the ICT:

1. shall support at least QVGA resolution;
2. should preferably support at least VGA resolution.

### 6.5.3 Frame rate

Where ICT that provides two-way voice communication includes real-time video functionality, the ICT:

1. shall support a frame rate of at least 20 frames per second (FPS);
2. should preferably support a frame rate of at least 30 frames per second (FPS) with or without sign language in the video stream.

### 6.5.4 Synchronization between audio and video

Where ICT that provides two-way voice communication includes real-time video functionality, the ICT shall ensure a maximum time difference of 100 ms between the speech and video presented to the user.

NOTE: Recent research shows that, if audio leads the video, the intelligibility suffers much more than the reverse.

### 6.5.5 Visual indicator of audio with video

Where ICT provides two-way voice communication, and includes real-time video functionality, the ICT shall provide a real time visual indicator of audio activity.

NOTE 1: The visual indicator may be a simple visual dot or LED, or other type of on/off indicator, that flickers to reflect audio activity.

NOTE 2: Without this indication a person who lacks the ability to hear does not know when someone is talking.

### 6.5.6 Speaker identification with video (sign language) communication

Where ICT provides speaker identification for voice users, it shall provide a means for speaker identification for real-time signing and sign language users once the start of signing has been indicated.

NOTE 1: The speaker ID can be in the same location as for voice users for multiparty calls.

NOTE 2: This mechanism might be triggered manually by a user, or automatically where this is technically achievable.

## 6.6 Alternatives to video-based services

Where ICT provides real-time video-based communication and also provides answering machine, auto attendant or interactive response facilities, the ICT should offer users a means to access the information and carry out the tasks related to these facilities:

1. for audible information, without the use of hearing;
2. for spoken commands, without the use of speech;
3. for visual information, without the use of vision.

NOTE: Solutions capable of generating real-time captions or handling RTT could satisfy the above requirement.

# 7 ICT with video capabilities

## 7.1 Caption processing technology

### 7.1.1 Captioning playback

Where ICT displays video with synchronized audio, it shall have a mode of operation to display the available captions. Where closed captions are provided as part of the content, the ICT shall allow the user to choose to display the captions.

NOTE 1: Captions may contain information about timing, colour and positioning. This caption data is important for caption users. Timing is used for caption synchronization. Colour can be used for speaker identification. Position can be used to avoid obscuring important information.

NOTE 2: If a Braille device is connected, the ICT should provide an option to display captions on the Braille device.

### 7.1.2 Captioning synchronization

Where ICT displays captions, the mechanism to display captions shall preserve synchronization between the audio and the corresponding captions as follows:

* Captions in recorded material: within 100 ms of the time stamp of the caption
* Live captions: within 100 ms of the availability of the caption to the player.

### 7.1.3 Preservation of captioning

Where ICT transmits, converts or records video with synchronized audio, it shall preserve caption data such that it can be displayed in a manner consistent with clauses 7.1.1 and 7.1.2.

Additional presentational aspects of the text such as screen position, text colours, text style and text fonts may convey meaning, based on regional conventions. Altering these presentational aspects could change the meaning and should be avoided wherever possible.

### 7.1.4 Captions characteristics and personalisation

Where ICT displays captions, it should provide a way for the user to customise the characteristics of the caption presentation.

NOTE: Defining the background and foreground colour of subtitles, font type, size opacity of the background box of subtitles, and the contour or border of the fonts can contribute to meeting this requirement.”.

### 7.1.5 Spoken subtitles

Where ICT displays video with synchronized audio, it should have a mode of operation to provide a spoken output of the available captions.

NOTE: Being able to manage speech output range for spoken subtitles independently from general ICT speech configuration and having background sounds at least 20 decibels lower than the spoken subtitles, with the exception of occasional sounds that last for only one or two seconds, can contribute to meeting this requirement.

## 7.2 Audio description technology

### 7.2.1 Audio description playback

Where ICT displays video with synchronized audio, it shall provide a mechanism to select and play available audio description to the default audio channel.

Where video technologies do not have explicit and separate mechanisms for audio description, an ICT is deemed to satisfy this requirement if the ICT enables the user to select and play several audio tracks.

NOTE 1: In such cases, the video content can include the audio description as one of the available audio tracks.

NOTE 2: Audio descriptions in digital media sometimes include information to allow descriptions that are longer than the gaps between dialogue. Support in digital media players for this "extended audio description" feature is useful, especially for digital media that is viewed personally.

### 7.2.2 Audio description synchronization

Where ICT has a mechanism to play audio description, it shall preserve the synchronization between the audio/visual content and the corresponding audio description.

### 7.2.3 Preservation of audio description

Where ICT transmits, converts, or records video with synchronized audio, it shall preserve audio description data such that it can be played in a manner consistent with clauses 7.2.1 and 7.2.2.

## 7.3 User controls for captions and audio description

Where ICT primarily displays materials containing video with associated audio content, user controls to activate subtitling and audio description shall be provided to the user at the same level of interaction (i.e. the number of steps to complete the task) as the primary media controls.

NOTE 1: Primary media controls are the set of controls that the user most commonly uses to control media.

NOTE 2: Products that have a general hardware volume control, such as a telephone, or a laptop which can be configured to display video through software but which is not its primary purpose, would not need dedicated hardware controls for captions and descriptions; however software controls, or hardware controls mapped through software, would need to be at the same level of interaction.

NOTE 3: It is best practice for ICT to include additional controls enabling the user to select whether captions and audio description are turned on or off by default.

# 8 Hardware

## 8.1 General

### 8.1.1 Generic requirements

The "generic requirements" of clause 5 also apply to ICT that is hardware.

### 8.1.2 Standard connections

Where an ICT provides user input or output device connection points, the ICT shall provide at least one input and/or output connection that conforms to an industry standard non-proprietary format, directly or through the use of commercially available adapters.

NOTE 1: The intent of this requirement is to ensure compatibility with assistive technologies by requiring the use of standard connections on ICT.

NOTE 2: The word connection applies to both physical and wireless connections.

NOTE 3: Current examples of industry standard non-proprietary formats are USB and Bluetooth.

### 8.1.3 Colour

Where the ICT has hardware aspects that use colour, colour shall not be used as the only visual means of conveying information, indicating an action, prompting a response, or distinguishing a visual element.

## 8.2 Hardware products with speech output

### 8.2.1 Speech volume gain

#### 8.2.1.1 Speech volume range

Where ICT hardware has speech output, it shall provide a means to adjust the speech output volume level over a range of at least 18 dB.

NOTE: Fixed-line handsets and headsets fulfilling the requirements of ANSI/TIA-4965 [i.2] are deemed to comply with this requirement.

#### 8.2.1.2 Incremental volume control

Where ICT hardware has speech output and its volume control is incremental, it shall provide at least one intermediate step of 12 dB gain above the lowest volume setting.

### 8.2.2 Magnetic coupling

#### 8.2.2.1 Fixed-line devices

Where ICT hardware is a fixed-line communication device with speech output and which is normally held to the ear, it shall provide a means of magnetic coupling which meets the requirements of ETSI ES 200 381-1 [2] and shall carry the "T" symbol specified in ETSI ETS 300 381 [1].

NOTE 1: ICT fulfilling the requirements of TIA-1083-A [i.24] is deemed to comply with the requirements of this clause.

NOTE 2: Magnetic coupling is also known as inductive coupling for T-coil.

#### 8.2.2.2 Wireless communication devices

Where ICT hardware is a wireless communication device with speech output which is normally held to the ear, it shall provide a means of magnetic coupling to hearing technologies which meets the requirements of ETSI ES 200 381-2 [3].

NOTE: ICT fulfilling the requirements of ANSI/IEEE C63.19 [i.1] is deemed to comply with the requirements of this clause.

## 8.3 Stationary ICT

### 8.3.0 General

Clauses 8.3.2 to 8.3.4 specify mandatory limits for the maximum and minimum height of operable parts and displays. Based on dimensions shown in figure 5.3 of ISO21542 [i.35], it is recommended that the possible height range is reduced to:

* minimum and maximum heights of operable parts: 800 mm and 1 100 mm respectively, and
* minimum and maximum heights of displays: 1 200 mm and 1 400 mm respectively.

### 8.3.1 Forward or side reach

Stationary ICT shall conform to either clause 8.3.2 or clause 8.3.3.

NOTE 1: This does not preclude conforming to both clauses.

NOTE 2: The dimensions set out in clauses 8.3.2 and 8.3.3 are identical to those given in clauses 407.8 and 408.2 of Section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act, as published in January 2017 [i.nn].

NOTE 3: Physical access to stationary ICT is dependent on the dimensions of both the ICT and the environment in which it is installed and operated. Clause 8.3 does not apply to the accessibility of the physical environment external to the ICT.

### 8.3.2 Forward reach

##### 8.3.2.1 Unobstructed high forward reach

Where no part of the stationary ICT obstructs the forward reach, at least one of each type of operable part shall be located no higher than 1 220 mm (48 inches) above the floor of the access space. This is shown in Figure 2.

##### 8.3.2.2 Unobstructed low forward reach

Where no part of the stationary ICT obstructs the forward reach, at least one of each type of operable part shall be located no lower than 380 mm (15 inches) above the floor of the access space. This is shown in Figure 2.



Figure 2: Unobstructed forward reach

##### 8.3.2.3 Obstructed forward reach

###### 8.3.2.3.1 Clear space

Where an obstruction is an integral part of the stationary ICT and hinders the access to any type of operable part, the ICT shall provide a clear space which extends beneath the obstructing element for a distance not less than the required reach depth over the obstruction.

NOTE: Ensuring that there will be unhindered “access to any type of operable part” guarantees that a user will be able access at least one of each type of operable part.

###### 8.3.2.3.2 Obstructed (< 510 mm) forward reach

Where the stationary ICT has an obstruction which is an integral part of the ICT and which is less than 510 mm (20 inches), the forward reach to at least one of each type of operable part shall be no higher than 1 220 mm (48 inches) above the floor contact of the ICT. This is shown in Figure 3 (a).

###### 8.3.2.3.3 Obstructed (< 635 mm) forward reach

Where the stationary ICT has an obstruction which is an integral part of the ICT and which is not less than 510 mm (20 inches) but is less than 635 mm (25 inches) maximum, the forward reach to at least one of each type of operable part shall be no higher than 1 120 mm (44 inches) above the floor contact of the ICT. This is shown in Figure 3 (b).



Figure 3: Obstructed forward reach

##### 8.3.2.4 Knee and toe clearance width

Where the space under an obstacle that is an integral part of the stationary ICT is part of access space, the clearance shall be at least 760 mm (30 inches) wide.

##### 8.3.2.5 Toe clearance

Where an obstacle is an integral part of the stationary ICT, a space under the obstacle that is less than 230 mm (9 inches) above the floor is considered toe clearance and shall:

1. extend 635 mm (25 inches) maximum under the whole obstacle;
2. provide a space at least 430 mm (17 inches) deep and 230 mm (9 inches) above the floor under the obstacle;
3. extend no more than 150 mm (6 inches) beyond any obstruction at 230 mm (9 inches) above the floor.

This is shown in Figure 4.



Figure 4: Toe clearance

##### 8.3.2.6 Knee clearance

Where an obstacle is an integral part of the stationary ICT, the space under the obstacle that is between 230 mm (9 inches) and 685 mm (25 inches) above the floor is considered knee clearance and shall:

1. extend no more than 635 mm (25 inches) under the obstacle at a height of 230 mm (9 inches) above the floor;
2. extend at least 280 mm (11 inches) under the obstacle at a height of 230 mm (9 inches) above the floor;
3. extend at least 205 mm (8 inches) under the obstacle at a height of 685 mm (27 inches) above the floor;
4. be permitted to be reduced in depth at a rate of 25 mm (1 inch) for each 150 mm (6 inches) in height.

This is shown in Figure 5.



Figure 5: Knee clearance

#### 8.3.3 Side reach

##### 8.3.3.1 Unobstructed high side reach

Where the side reach is unobstructed or obstructed by an element that is an integral part of the stationary ICT and which is less than 255 mm (10 inches), at least one of each type of operable part shall be within a high side reach which is less than or equal to 1 220 mm (48 inches) above the floor of the access space. This is shown in Figure 6.

##### 8.3.3.2 Unobstructed low side reach

Where the side reach is unobstructed or obstructed by an element that is an integral part of the stationary ICT and which is less than 255 mm (10 inches), at least one of each type of operable part shall be within a low side reach which is greater than or equal to 380 mm (15 inches) above the floor of the access space. This is shown in Figure 6.



Figure 6: Unobstructed side reach

##### 8.3.3.3 Obstructed side reach

###### 8.3.3.3.1 Obstructed (≤ 255 mm) side reach

Where stationary ICT has an obstruction which is an integral part of the ICT, the height of the obstruction shall be less than 865 mm (34 inches). Where the depth of the obstruction is less than or equal to 255 mm (10 inches), the high side reach to at least one of each type of operable part shall be no higher than 1 220 mm (48 inches) above the floor of the access space. This is shown in Figure 7 (a).

###### 8.3.3.3.2 Obstructed (≤ 610 mm) side reach

Where stationary ICT has an obstruction which is an integral part of the ICT, the height of the obstruction shall be less than 865 mm (34 inches). Where the depth of the obstruction is greater than 255 mm (10 inches) with a maximum depth of 610 mm (24 inches), the high side reach to at least one of each type of operable part shall be no higher than 1 170 mm (46 inches) above the floor of the access space. This is shown in Figure 7 (b).



Figure 7: Obstructed high side reach

### 8.3.4 Clear floor or ground space

#### 8.3.4.1 Change in level

Where stationary ICT has a floor within it, then any change of floor level within it or entering it shall be ramped with a slope no steeper than 1:48.

Exceptions:

1. If the change in floor level is less than or equal to 6,4 mm (¼ inch) the change may be vertical as shown in Figure 8.
2. If the change in floor level is less than or equal to 13 mm (½ inch) the change may have a slope not steeper than 1:2 as shown in Figure 9.



Figure 8: Vertical change in level



Figure 9: Bevelled change in level

#### 8.3.4.2 Clear floor or ground space

Where stationary ICT has an operating area within it, it shall provide a clear floor area that has the minimum dimensions of 760 mm (30 inches) by 1 220 mm (48 inches) from which to operate the ICT. This is shown in Figure 10.



Figure 10: Clear floor or ground space

#### 8.3.4.3 Approach

##### 8.3.4.3.1 General

Where stationary ICT has an access space inside it, at least one full side of the space shall be unobstructed.

##### 8.3.4.3.2 Forward approach

Where the operating area is inside an alcove within the stationary ICT, the alcove is deeper than 610 mm (24 inches), and where a forward approach is necessary, the dimension of the access space shall be a minimum of 915 mm (36 inches) wide. This is shown in Figure 11.



Figure 11: Manoeuvring Clearance in an Alcove, Forward Approach

##### 8.3.4.3.3 Parallel approach

Where the operating area is inside an alcove within the stationary ICT, the alcove is deeper than 380 mm (15 inches), and where a parallel approach is possible, the dimension of the access space shall be a minimum of 1 525 mm (60 inches) wide. This is shown in Figure 12.



Figure 12: Manoeuvring Clearance in an Alcove, Parallel Approach

### 8.3.5 Visibility

Where stationary ICT provides one or more display screens , at least one of each type of display screen shall be positioned such that the information on the screen is legible from a point located 1 015 mm (40 inches) above the centre of the floor of the operating area).

NOTE: The intent of this provision is that the information on the screen can be read by users with normal vision and appropriate language skills, when seated in a wheelchair.

### 8.3.6 Installation instructions

Installation instructions shall be made available for all stationary ICT. These instructions shall give guidance on how to install the ICT in a manner that takes into account applicable requirements for accessibility of the built environment as they apply to the installation of the ICT. Where there are no applicable requirements for accessibility of the built environment as they apply to the installation of the ICT, the instructions should require that the dimensions of the installed ICT conform to clauses 8.3.2 to 8.3.4 of the present document.

## 8.4 Mechanically operable parts

### 8.4.1 Numeric keys

Where provided, physical numeric keys arranged in a rectangular keypad layout shall have the number five key tactilely distinct from the other keys of the keypad.

NOTE: Recommendation ITU‑T E.161 [i.20] describes the 12-key telephone keypad layout and provides further details of the form of tactile markers.

### 8.4.2 Operation of mechanical parts

#### 8.4.2.1 Means of operation of mechanical parts

Where a control requires grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist to operate it, an accessible alternative means of operation that does not require these actions shall be provided.

#### 8.4.2.2 Force of operation of mechanical parts

Where a control requires a force greater than 22,2 N to operate it, an accessible alternative means of operation that requires a force less than 22,2 N shall be provided.

NOTE: ISO 21542: 2011 Building Construction — Accessibility and Usability of the Built Environment recommends a value between 2.5 and 5 Newtons.

### 8.4.3 Keys, tickets and fare cards

Where ICT provides keys, tickets or fare cards, and their orientation is important for further use, they shall have an orientation that is tactilely discernible.

NOTE: ETSI ETS 300 767 [i.6] defines suitable tactile indications for plastic cards.

## 8.5 Tactile indication of speech mode

Where ICT is designed for shared use and speech output is available, a tactile indication of the means to initiate the speech mode of operation shall be provided.

NOTE: The tactile indication could include Braille instructions.

# 9 Web

## 9.0 General (informative)

Requirements in clause 9 apply to web pages (as defined in clause 3.1) including:

* Conformance with W3C Web Content Accessibility Guidelines (WCAG 2.0) Level AA is equivalent to conforming with clauses 9.1.1, 9.1.2, 9.1.3.1 to 9.1.3.3, 9.1.4.1 to 9.1.4.5, 9.2.1.1, 9.2.1.2, 9.2.2, 9.2.3, 9.2.4, 9.3, 9.4.1.1, 9.4.1.2 and the conformance requirements of clause 9.5 of the present document.
* Conformance with W3C Web Content Accessibility Guidelines (WCAG 2.1) [5] Level AA is equivalent to conforming with all of clauses 9.1 to 9.4 and the conformance requirements of clause 9.5 of the present document.
* Requirements for non-web documents and non-web software are given in clauses 10 and 11 respectively.

NOTE 1: When evaluating web sites they are evaluated as individual web pages. Web applications, mobile web applications etc. are covered under the definition of web page which is quite broad and covers all web content types.

NOTE 2: WCAG 2.0 is identical to ISO/IEC 40500 (2012): "Information technology - W3C Web Content Accessibility Guidelines (WCAG) 2.0" [4].

The requirements in clauses 9.1 to 9.4 are written using the concept of satisfying success criteria (defined in clause 3.1). A web page satisfies a WCAG success criterion when the success criterion does not evaluate to false when applied to the web page. This implies that if the success criterion puts conditions on a specific feature and that specific feature does not occur in the web page, then the web page satisfies the success criterion.

NOTE 3: For example, a web page that does not contain pre-recorded audio content in synchronized media will automatically satisfy WCAG success criterion 1.2.2 (captions - pre-recorded) and, in consequence, will also conform to clause 9.1.2.2.

In addition to Level AA success criteria, the Web Content Accessibility Guidelines also include success criteria for Level AAA. These are included in Annex D of the present document.

NOTE 4: The body of the present document does not include the Level AAA success criteria, both to avoid confusion with the Level A and Level AA based requirements and for harmonisation with other procurement standards.  
Web authors and procurement accessibility specialists are encouraged to improve accessibility beyond the requirements of the present document and should therefore consider whether any of the WCAG Level AAA success criteria offer suggestions that may be applicable and relevant to their project, as well as potentially beneficial to some users.

NOTE 5: The W3C states that "It is not recommended that Level AAA conformance be required as a general policy for entire sites because it is not possible to satisfy all Level AAA Success Criteria for some content".

NOTE 6: "Void" clauses have been inserted in order to maintain alignment with the numbering of WCAG 2.1 Level A and Level AA Success Criteria.

## 9.1 Perceivable

### 9.1.1 Text alternatives

#### 9.1.1.1 Non-text content

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.1.1 Non-text content](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#non-text-content).

### 9.1.2 Time-based media

#### 9.1.2.1 Audio-only and video-only (pre-recorded)

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.1 Audio-only and Video-only (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-only-and-video-only-prerecorded).

#### 9.1.2.2 Captions (pre-recorded)

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.2 Captions (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#captions-prerecorded).

#### 9.1.2.3 Audio description or media alternative (pre-recorded)

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.3 Audio Description or Media Alternative (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-description-or-media-alternative-prerecorded).

#### 9.1.2.4 Captions (live)

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.4 Captions (Live)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#captions-live).

#### 9.1.2.5 Audio description (pre-recorded)

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.5 Audio Description (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-description-prerecorded).

### 9.1.3 Adaptable

#### 9.1.3.1 Info and relationships

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.1 Info and Relationships](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#info-and-relationships).

#### 9.1.3.2 Meaningful sequence

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.2 Meaningful Sequence](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#meaningful-sequence).

#### 9.1.3.3 Sensory characteristics

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.3 Sensory Characteristics](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#sensory-characteristics).

#### 9.1.3.4 Orientation

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.4 Orientation](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#orientation).

#### 9.1.3.5 Identify input purpose

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.5 Identify Input Purpose](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#identify-input-purpose).

### 9.1.4 Distinguishable

#### 9.1.4.1 Use of colour

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.1 Use of Color](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#use-of-color).

#### 9.1.4.2 Audio control

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.2 Audio Control](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-control).

#### 9.1.4.3 Contrast (minimum)

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.3 Contrast (Minimum)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#contrast-minimum).

#### 9.1.4.4 Resize text

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.4 Resize text](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#resize-text).

#### 9.1.4.5 Images of text

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.5 Images of Text](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#images-of-text).

#### 9.1.4.6 Void

#### 9.1.4.7 Void

#### 9.1.4.8 Void

#### 9.1.4.9 Void

#### 9.1.4.10 Reflow

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.10 Reflow](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#reflow).

#### 9.1.4.11 Non-text contrast

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.11 Non-text Contrast](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#non-text-contrast).

#### 9.1.4.12 Text spacing

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.12 Text spacing](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#text-spacing).

#### 9.1.4.13 Content on hover or focus

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.13 Content on Hover or Focus](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#content-on-hover-or-focus).

## 9.2 Operable

### 9.2.1 Keyboard accessible

#### 9.2.1.1 Keyboard

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.1.1 Keyboard](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#keyboard).

#### 9.2.1.2 No keyboard trap

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.1.2 No Keyboard Trap](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#no-keyboard-trap).

#### 9.2.1.3 Void

#### 9.2.1.4 Character key shortcuts

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.1.4 Character Key Shortcuts](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#character-key-shortcuts).

### 9.2.2 Enough time

#### 9.2.2.1 Timing adjustable

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.2.1 Timing Adjustable](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#timing-adjustable).

#### 9.2.2.2 Pause, stop, hide

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.2.2 Pause, Stop, Hide](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#pause-stop-hide).

### 9.2.3 Seizures and physical reactions

#### 9.2.3.1 Three flashes or below threshold

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.3.1 Three Flashes or Below Threshold](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#three-flashes-or-below-threshold).

### 9.2.4 Navigable

#### 9.2.4.1 Bypass blocks

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.1 Bypass Blocks](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#bypass-blocks).

#### 9.2.4.2 Page titled

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.2 Page Titled](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#page-titled).

#### 9.2.4.3 Focus Order

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.3 Focus Order](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#focus-order).

#### 9.2.4.4 Link purpose (in context)

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.4 Link Purpose (In Context)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#link-purpose-in-context).

#### 9.2.4.5 Multiple ways

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.5 Multiple Ways](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#multiple-ways).

#### 9.2.4.6 Headings and labels

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.6 Headings and Labels](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#headings-and-labels).

#### 9.2.4.7 Focus visible

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.7 Focus Visible](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#focus-visible).

### 9.2.5 Input modalities

#### 9.2.5.1 Pointer gestures

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.5.1 Pointer Gestures](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#pointer-gestures).

#### 9.2.5.2 Pointer cancellation

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.5.2 Pointer Cancellation](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#pointer-cancellation).

#### 9.2.5.3 Label in name

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.5.3 Label in Name](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#label-in-name).

#### 9.2.5.4 Motion actuation

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.5.4 Motion Actuation](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#motion-actuation).

## 9.3 Understandable

### 9.3.1 Readable

#### 9.3.1.1 Language of page

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.1.1 Language of Page](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#language-of-page).

#### 9.3.1.2 Language of parts

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.1.2 Language of Parts](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#language-of-parts).

### 9.3.2 Predictable

#### 9.3.2.1 On focus

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.2.1 On Focus](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#on-focus).

#### 9.3.2.2 On input

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.2.2 On Input](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#on-input).

#### 9.3.2.3 Consistent navigation

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.2.3 Consistent Navigation](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#consistent-navigation).

#### 9.3.2.4 Consistent identification

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.2.4 Consistent Identification](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#consistent-identification).

### 9.3.3 Input assistance

#### 9.3.3.1 Error identification

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.1 Error Identification](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#error-identification).

#### 9.3.3.2 Labels or instructions

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.2 Labels or Instructions](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#labels-or-instructions).

#### 9.3.3.3 Error suggestion

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.3 Error Suggestion](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#error-suggestion).

#### 9.3.3.4 Error prevention (legal, financial, data)

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.4 Error Prevention (Legal, Financial, Data)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#error-prevention-legal-financial-data).

## 9.4 Robust

### 9.4.1 Compatible

#### 9.4.1.1 Parsing

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 4.1.1 Parsing](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#parsing).

#### 9.4.1.2 Name, role, value

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 4.1.2 Name, Role, Value](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#name-role-value).

#### 9.4.1.3 Status messages

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 4.1.3 Status Messages](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#status-messages).

## 9.5 WCAG conformance requirements

Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy all the following five WCAG 2.1 conformance requirements at Level AA [5].

1. Conformance level
2. Full pages
3. Complete processes
4. Only Accessibility-Supported Ways of Using Technologies
5. Non-interference

NOTE 1: A Web page that meets all of requirements 9.1 to 9.4, or where a Level AA conforming alternate version (as defined in WCAG 2.1 [5]) is provided, will meet conformance requirement 1.

NOTE 2: According to W3C: "WCAG 2.1 extends Web Content Accessibility Guidelines 2.0 [4], which was published as a W3C Recommendation December 2008. Content that conforms to WCAG 2.1 also conforms to WCAG 2.0, and therefore to policies that reference WCAG 2.0" [4].

NOTE 3: Conformance requirement 5 states that all content on the page, including content that is not otherwise relied upon to meet conformance, meets clauses 9.1.4.2, 9.2.1.2, 9.2.2.2 and 9.2.3.1.

# 10 Non-web documents

## 10.0 General (informative)

Requirements in clause 10 apply to documents:

* that are not web pages;
* that are not embedded in web pages;
* that are embedded in web pages but are not used in the rendering and are not intended to be rendered together with the web page in which they are embedded (i.e. downloadable documents).

Clause 9 provides requirements for documents that are in web pages or that are embedded in web pages and that are used in the rendering or that are intended to be rendered together with the web page in which they are embedded.

NOTE 1: Some examples of documents are letters, spreadsheets, emails, books, pictures, presentations, and movies that have an associated user agent such as a document reader, editor or media player.

NOTE 2: A single document may be composed of multiple files such as the video content, closed caption text, etc. This fact is not usually apparent to the end-user consuming the document/content.

NOTE 3: Documents require a user agent in order for the content to be presented to users. The requirements for user agents can be found in clause 11.

NOTE 4: The requirements for content that is part of software, can be found in clause 11.

NOTE 5: The success criteria set out in clause 10 are intended to harmonize with the Working Group Note [i.26] produced by the W3C's [WCAG2ICT Task Force](http://www.w3.org/WAI/GL/WCAG2ICT-TF/).

NOTE 6: "Void" clauses have been inserted in order to maintain alignment of the numbering in clauses 9, 10 and 11.

## 10.1 Perceivable

### 10.1.1 Text alternatives

#### 10.1.1.1 Non-text content

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.1.1 Non-text Content](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#non-text-content).

NOTE: CAPTCHAs do not currently appear outside of the Web. However, if they do appear, this guidance is accurate.

### 10.1.2 Time-based media

#### 10.1.2.1 Audio-only and video-only (pre-recorded)

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.1 Audio-only and Video-only (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-only-and-video-only-prerecorded).

NOTE: The alternative can be provided directly in the document - or provided in an alternate version that meets the success criterion.

#### 10.1.2.2 Captions (pre-recorded)

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.2 Captions (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#captions-prerecorded).

NOTE: The WCAG 2.1 definition of "captions" notes that "in some countries, captions are called subtitles". They are also sometimes referred to as "subtitles for the hearing impaired". Per the definition in WCAG 2.1, to meet this success criterion, whether called captions or subtitles, they would have to provide "synchronized visual and / or text alternative for both speech and non-speech audio information needed to understand the media content" where non-speech information includes "sound effects, music, laughter, speaker identification and location".

#### 10.1.2.3 Audio description or media alternative (pre-recorded)

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.3 Audio Description or Media Alternative (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-description-or-media-alternative-prerecorded).

NOTE 1: The WCAG 2.1 definition of "audio description" says that "audio description" is "Also called 'video description' and 'descriptive narration'".

NOTE 2: Secondary or alternate audio tracks are commonly used for this purpose.

#### 10.1.2.4 Captions (live)

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.4 Captions (Live)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#captions-live).

NOTE: The WCAG 2.1 definition of "captions" notes that "in some countries, captions are called subtitles". They are also sometimes referred to as "subtitles for the hearing impaired". Per the definition in WCAG 2.1, to meet this success criterion, whether called captions or subtitles, they would have to provide "synchronized visual and / or text alternative for both speech and non-speech audio information needed to understand the media content" where non-speech information includes "sound effects, music, laughter, speaker identification and location".

#### 10.1.2.5 Audio description (pre-recorded)

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.5 Audio Description (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-description-prerecorded).

NOTE 1: The WCAG 2.1 definition of "audio description" says that audio description is "Also called 'video description' and 'descriptive narration'".

NOTE 2: Secondary or alternate audio tracks are commonly used for this purpose.

### 10.1.3 Adaptable

#### 10.1.3.1 Info and relationships

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.1 Info and Relationships](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#info-and-relationships).

#### 10.1.3.2 Meaningful sequence

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.2 Meaningful Sequence](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#meaningful-sequence).

#### 10.1.3.3 Sensory characteristics

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.3 Sensory Characteristics](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#sensory-characteristics).

#### 10.1.3.4 Orientation

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.4 Orientation](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#orientation).

#### 10.1.3.5 Identify input purpose

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.5 Identify Input Purpose](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#identify-input-purpose).

### 10.1.4 Distinguishable

#### 10.1.4.1 Use of colour

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.1 Use of Color](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#use-of-color).

#### 10.1.4.2 Audio control

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 10.1.

Table 10.1: Document success criterion: Audio control

|  |
| --- |
| If any audio in a document plays automatically for more than 3 seconds, either a mechanism is available to pause or stop the audio, or a mechanism is available to control audio volume independently from the overall system volume level. |
| NOTE 1: Since any part of a document that does not meet this success criterion can interfere with a user's ability to use the whole document, all content in the document (whether or not it is used to meet other success criteria) shall meet this success criterion. |
| NOTE 2: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.2 Audio](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-control) Control, replacing "on a Web page" with "in a document" "any content" with "any part of a document", "whole page" with "whole document", "on the Web page" with "in the document", removing "See Conformance Requirement 5: Non‑Interference" and adding note 1. |

#### 10.1.4.3 Contrast (minimum)

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.3 Contrast (Minimum)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#contrast-minimum).

#### 10.1.4.4 Resize text

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.4 Resize Text](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#resize-text).

NOTE 1: Content for which there are software players, viewers or editors with a 200 percent zoom feature would automatically meet this success criterion when used with such players, unless the content will not work with zoom.

NOTE 2: This success criterion is about the ability to allow users to enlarge the text on screen at least up to 200 % without needing to use assistive technologies. This means that the application provides some means for enlarging the text 200 % (zoom or otherwise) without loss of content or functionality or that the application works with the platform features that meet this requirement.

#### 10.1.4.5 Images of text

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.5 Images of Text](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#images-of-text).

#### 10.1.4.6 Void

#### 10.1.4.7 Void

#### 10.1.4.8 Void

#### 10.1.4.9 Void

#### 10.1.4.10 Reflow

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 10.2.

Table 10.2: Document success criterion: Reflow

|  |
| --- |
| Content can be presented without loss of information or functionality, and without requiring scrolling in two dimensions for:   * Vertical scrolling content at a width equivalent to 320 CSS pixels; * Horizontal scrolling content at a height equivalent to 256 CSS pixels;   Except for parts of the content which require two-dimensional layout for usage or meaning. |
| NOTE 1: 320 CSS pixels is equivalent to a starting viewport width of 1280 CSS pixels wide at 400% zoom. For documents which are designed to scroll horizontally (e.g. with vertical text), the 256 CSS pixels is equivalent to a starting viewport height of 1024px at 400% zoom. |
| NOTE 2: Examples of content which require two-dimensional layout are images, maps, diagrams, video, games, presentations, data tables, and interfaces where it is necessary to keep toolbars in view while manipulating content. |
| NOTE 3: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.10 Reflow](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#reflow) replacing the original WCAG 2.1 notes with notes 1 and 2, above. |

#### 10.1.4.11 Non-text contrast

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.11 Non-text Contrast](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#non-text-contrast).

#### 10.1.4.12 Text spacing

Where ICT is a non-web document that does not have a fixed size content layout area that is essential to the information being conveyed, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.12 Text spacing](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#text-spacing).

#### 10.1.4.13 Content on hover or focus

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.13 Content on Hover or Focus](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#content-on-hover-or-focus).

## 10.2 Operable

### 10.2.1 Keyboard accessible

#### 10.2.1.1 Keyboard

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.1.1 Keyboard](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#keyboard).

#### 10.2.1.2 No keyboard trap

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 10.3.

Table 10.3: Document success criterion: No keyboard trap

|  |
| --- |
| If keyboard focus can be moved to a component of the document using a keyboard interface, then focus can be moved away from that component using only a keyboard interface, and, if it requires more than unmodified arrow or tab keys or other standard exit methods, the user is advised of the method for moving focus away. |
| NOTE 1: Since any part of a document that does not meet this success criterion can interfere with a user's ability to use the whole document, it is necessary for all content in the document (whether or not it is used to meet other success criteria) to meet this success criterion. |
| NOTE 2: Standard exit methods may vary by platform. For example, on many desktop platforms, the Escape key is a standard method for exiting. |
| NOTE 3: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.1.2 No Keyboard Trap](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#no-keyboard-trap) replacing "page" and "Web page" with "document", removing "See Conformance Requirement 5: Non-Interference" and with the addition of note 2 above and with note 1 above re-drafted to avoid the use of the word "must". |

#### 10.2.1.3 Void

#### 10.2.1.4 Character key shortcuts

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.1.4 Character Key Shortcuts](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#character-key-shortcuts).

### 10.2.2 Enough time

#### 10.2.2.1 Timing adjustable

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 10.4.

Table 10.4: Document success criterion: Timing adjustable

|  |
| --- |
| For each time limit that is set by the document, at least one of the following is true:   * **Turn off:** The user is allowed to turn off the time limit before encountering it; or * **Adjust:** The user is allowed to adjust the time limit before encountering it over a wide range that is at least ten times the length of the default setting; or * **Extend:** The user is warned before time expires and given at least 20 seconds to extend the time limit with a simple action (for example, "press the space bar"), and the user is allowed to extend the time limit at least ten times; or * **Real-time Exception:** The time limit is a required part of a real-time event (for example, an auction), and no alternative to the time limit is possible; or * **Essential Exception:** The time limit is essential and extending it would invalidate the activity; or * **20 Hour Exception:** The time limit is longer than 20 hours. |
| NOTE 1: This success criterion helps ensure that users can complete tasks without unexpected changes in content or context that are a result of a time limit. This success criterion should be considered in conjunction with [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.2.1](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#on-focus), which puts limits on changes of content or context as a result of user action. |
| NOTE 2: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.2.1 Timing Adjustable](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#timing-adjustable) replacing "the content" with "documents" and with the words "WCAG 2.1" added before the word "Success Criterion" in note 1 above. |

#### 10.2.2.2 Pause, stop, hide

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 10.5.

Table 10.5: Document success criterion: Pause, stop, hide

|  |
| --- |
| For moving, blinking, scrolling, or auto-updating information, all of the following are true:   * **Moving, blinking, scrolling:** For any moving, blinking or scrolling information that (1) starts automatically, (2) lasts more than five seconds, and (3) is presented in parallel with other content, there is a mechanism for the user to pause, stop, or hide it unless the movement, blinking, or scrolling is part of an activity where it is essential; and * **Auto-updating:** For any auto-updating information that (1) starts automatically and (2) is presented in parallel with other content, there is a mechanism for the user to pause, stop, or hide it or to control the frequency of the update unless the auto-updating is part of an activity where it is essential. |
| NOTE 1: For requirements related to flickering or flashing content, refer to [WCAG 2.1 Guideline 2.3](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#seizures-and-physical-reactions). |
| NOTE 2: Since any part of a document that does not meet this success criterion can interfere with a user's ability to use the whole document, it is necessary for all content in the document (whether it is used to meet other success criteria or not) to meet this success criterion. |
| NOTE 3: Content that is updated periodically by software or that is streamed to the user agent is not required to preserve or present information that is generated or received between the initiation of the pause and resuming presentation, as this may not be technically possible, and in many situations could be misleading to do so. |
| NOTE 4: An animation that occurs as part of a preload phase or similar situation can be considered essential if interaction cannot occur during that phase for all users and if not indicating progress could confuse users or cause them to think that content was frozen or broken.  NOTE 5: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.2.2 Pause, Stop, Hide](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#pause-stop-hide) replacing "page" and "Web page" with "document", removing "See Conformance Requirement 5: Non-Interference" in note 2 of the success criterion, with the words "WCAG 2.1" added before the word "Guideline" in note 1 above and with note 2 above re-drafted to avoid the use of the word "must". |

### 10.2.3 Seizures and physical reactions

#### 10.2.3.1 Three flashes or below threshold

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 10.6.

Table 10.6: Document success criterion: Three flashes or below threshold

|  |
| --- |
| Documents do not contain anything that flashes more than three times in any one second period, or the flash is below the general flash and red flash thresholds. |
| NOTE 1: Since any part of a document that does not meet this success criterion can interfere with a user's ability to use the whole document, it is necessary for all content in the document (whether it is used to meet other success criteria or not) to meet this success criterion. |
| NOTE 2: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.3.1 Three Flashes or Below Threshold](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#three-flashes-or-below-threshold) replacing "Web pages" with "documents", "the whole page" with "the whole document", "the Web page" with "the document" and removing "See Conformance Requirement 5: Non-Interference" and with note 1 above re-drafted to avoid the use of the word "must". |

### 10.2.4 Navigable

#### 10.2.4.1 Void

NOTE: The web page related requirement “Bypass blocks” does not apply to single documents, but to a specific definition of “sets of documents” that are very rare.

#### 10.2.4.2 Document titled

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 10.7.

Table 10.7: Document success criterion: Document titled

|  |
| --- |
| Documents have titles that describe topic or purpose. |
| NOTE 1: The name of a document (e.g. document, media file) is a sufficient title if it describes the topic or purpose. |
| NOTE 2: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.2 Page Titled](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#page-titled) replacing "Web pages" with "documents" and with the addition of note 1 above. |

#### 10.2.4.3 Focus Order

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 10.8.

Table 10.8: Document success criterion: Focus order

|  |
| --- |
| If a document can be navigated sequentially and the navigation sequences affect meaning or operation, focusable components receive focus in an order that preserves meaning and operability. |
| NOTE: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.3 Focus Order](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#focus-order) replacing "Web page" with "document". |

#### 10.2.4.4 Link purpose (in context)

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.4 Link Purpose (In Context)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#link-purpose-in-context).

#### 10.2.4.5 Void

NOTE: The web page related requirement “Multiple ways” does not apply to single documents, but to a specific definition of “sets of documents” that are very rare.

#### 10.2.4.6 Headings and labels

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.6 Headings and Labels](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#headings-and-labels).

#### 10.2.4.7 Focus visible

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.7 Focus Visible](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#focus-visible).

### 10.2.5 Input modalities

#### 10.2.5.1 Pointer gestures

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 10.9.

Table 10.9: Document success criterion: Pointer gestures

|  |
| --- |
| All functionality that uses multipoint or path-based gestures for operation can be operated with a single pointer without a path-based gesture, unless a multipoint or path-based gesture is essential. |
| NOTE 1: This requirement applies to documents that interpret pointer actions (i.e. this does not apply to actions that are required to operate the user agent or assistive technology). |
| NOTE 2: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.5.1 Pointer Gestures](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#pointer-gestures) replacing the original WCAG 2.1 note with note 1 above. |

#### 10.2.5.2 Pointer cancellation

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 10.10.

Table 10.10: Document success criterion: Pointer cancellation

|  |
| --- |
| For functionality that can be operated using a single pointer, at least one of the following is true:   * No Down-Event: The down-event of the pointer is not used to execute any part of the function; * Abort or Undo: Completion of the function is on the up-event, and a mechanism is available to abort the function before completion or to undo the function after completion; * Up Reversal: The up-event reverses any outcome of the preceding down-event; * Essential: Completing the function on the down-event is essential. |
| NOTE 1: Functions that emulate a keyboard or numeric keypad key press are considered essential. |
| NOTE 2: This requirement applies to a document that interprets pointer actions (i.e. this does not apply to actions that are required to operate the user agent or assistive technology). |
| NOTE 3: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.5.2 Pointer Cancellation](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#pointer-cancellation) replacing the original WCAG 2.1 note with notes 1 and 2 above. |

#### 10.2.5.3 Label in name

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.5.3 Label in Name](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#label-in-name).

#### 10.2.5.4 Motion actuation

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.5.4 Motion Actuation](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#motion-actuation).

## 10.3 Understandable

### 10.3.1 Readable

#### 10.3.1.1 Language of page

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 10.11.

Table 10.11: Document success criterion: Language of page

|  |
| --- |
| The default human language of each document can be programmatically determined. |
| NOTE: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.1.1 Language of Page](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#language-of-page) replacing "web page" with "document". |

#### 10.3.1.2 Language of parts

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 10.12.

Table 10.12: Document success criterion: Language of parts

|  |
| --- |
| The human language of each passage or phrase in the document can be programmatically determined except for proper names, technical terms, words of indeterminate language, and words or phrases that have become part of the vernacular of the immediately surrounding text. |
| NOTE 1: There are some document technologies where there is no assistive technology supported method for marking the language for the different passages or phrases in the document, and it would not be possible to meet this success criterion with those technologies. |
| NOTE 2: Inheritance is one common method. For example a document provides the language that it is using and it can be assumed that all of the text or user interface elements within that document will be using the same language unless it is indicated. |
| NOTE 3: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.1.2 Language of Parts](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#language-of-parts) replacing "content" with "document" and with the addition of notes 1 and 2 above. |

### 10.3.2 Predictable

#### 10.3.2.1 On focus

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.2.1 On Focus](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#on-focus).

NOTE: Some compound documents and their user agents are designed to provide significantly different viewing and editing functionality depending upon what portion of the compound document is being interacted with (e.g. a presentation that contains an embedded spreadsheet, where the menus and toolbars of the user agent change depending upon whether the user is interacting with the presentation content, or the embedded spreadsheet content). If the user uses a mechanism other than putting focus on that portion of the compound document with which they mean to interact (e.g. by a menu choice or special keyboard gesture), any resulting change of context would not be subject to this success criterion because it was not caused by a change of focus.

#### 10.3.2.2 On input

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.2.2 On Input](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#on-input).

#### 10.3.2.3 Void

NOTE: The web page related requirement “Consistent navigation” does not apply to single documents, but to a specific definition of “sets of documents” that are very rare.

#### 10.3.2.4 Void

NOTE: The web page related requirement “Consistent identification” does not apply to single documents, but to a specific definition of “sets of documents” that are very rare.

### 10.3.3 Input assistance

#### 10.3.3.1 Error identification

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.1 Error Identification](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#error-identification).

#### 10.3.3.2 Labels or instructions

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.2 Labels or Instructions](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#labels-or-instructions).

#### 10.3.3.3 Error suggestion

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.3 Error Suggestion](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#error-suggestion).

#### 10.3.3.4 Error prevention (legal, financial, data)

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 10.13.

Table 10.13: Document success criterion: Error prevention (legal, financial, data)

|  |
| --- |
| For documents that cause legal commitments or financial transactions for the user to occur, that modify or delete user-controllable data in data storage systems, or that submit user test responses, at least one of the following is true:  1) Reversible: Submissions are reversible.  2) Checked: Data entered by the user is checked for input errors and the user is provided an opportunity to correct them.  3) Confirmed: A mechanism is available for reviewing, confirming, and correcting information before finalizing the submission. |
| NOTE: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.4 Error Prevention (Legal, Financial, Data)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#error-prevention-legal-financial-data) replacing "web pages" with "documents". |

## 10.4 Robust

### 10.4.1 Compatible

#### 10.4.1.1 Parsing

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 10.14.

Table 10.14: Document success criterion: Parsing

|  |
| --- |
| For documents that use markup languages, in such a way that the markup is separately exposed and available to assistive technologies and accessibility features of software or to a user-selectable user agent, elements have complete start and end tags, elements are nested according to their specifications, elements do not contain duplicate attributes, and any IDs are unique, except where the specifications allow these features. |
| NOTE 1: Start and end tags that are missing a critical character in their formation, such as a closing angle bracket or a mismatched attribute value quotation mark are not complete. |
| NOTE 2: Markup is not always available to assistive technology or to user selectable user agents such as browsers. In such cases, conformance to this provision would have no impact on accessibility as it can for web content where it is exposed. |
| NOTE 3: Examples of markup that is separately exposed and available to assistive technologies and to user agents include but are not limited to: documents encoded in HTML, ODF, and OOXML. In these examples, the markup can be parsed entirely in two ways: (a) by assistive technologies which may directly open the document, (b) by assistive technologies using DOM APIs of user agents for these document formats. |
| NOTE 4: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 4.1.1 Parsing](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#parsing) replacing "In content implemented using markup languages" with "For documents that use markup languages, in such a way that the markup is separately exposed and available to assistive technologies and accessibility features of software or to a user-selectable user agent" with the addition of notes 2 and 3 above. |

#### 10.4.1.2 Name, role, value

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 10.15.

Table 10.15: Document success criterion: Name, role, value

|  |
| --- |
| For all user interface components (including but not limited to: form elements, links and components generated by scripts), the name and role can be programmatically determined; states, properties, and values that can be set by the user can be programmatically set; and notification of changes to these items is available to user agents, including assistive technologies. |
| NOTE 1: This success criterion is primarily for software developers who develop or use custom user interface components. Standard user interface components on most accessibility-supported platforms already meet this success criterion when used according to specification. |
| NOTE 2: For document formats that support interoperability with assistive technology, standard user interface components often meet this success criterion when used according to the general design and accessibility guidance for the document format. |
| NOTE 3: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 4.1.2 Name, Role, Value](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#name-role-value) replacing the original WCAG 2.1 note with: "This success criterion is primarily for software developers who develop or use custom user interface components. For example, standard user interface components on most accessibility-supported platforms already meet this success criterion when used according to specification." and with the addition of note 2 above. |

#### 10.4.1.3 Status messages

Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 4.1.3 Status Messages](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#status-messages).

## 10.5 Caption positioning

Where ICT is a non-web document that contains synchronized media with captions, the captions should not obscure relevant information in the synchronized media.

## 10.6 Audio description timing

Where ICT is a non-web document that contains synchronized media with audio description, the audio description should not interfere with relevant audio information in the synchronized media.

# 11 Software

## 11.0 General (informative)

This clause provides requirements for:

* platform software;
* software that provides a user interface including content that is in the software;
* authoring tools;
* software that operates as assistive technology;
* mobile applications.

NOTE 1: User agents are examples of software that provide a user interface. They retrieve, render and facilitate end user interaction with authored content. User agents play an important role in the accessibility of authored content rendered in the user interface. UAAG 2.0 [i.34] provides additional advice for those who are creating user agents and want to increase functionality when rendering authored content in an accessible way.

NOTE 2: The requirements for Web content, including software that is Web content, can be found in clause 9.

NOTE 3: The requirements for documents, that may be presented by user agents, can be found in clause 10.

NOTE 4: Although the accessibility of command line interfaces is not dealt with in the present document, accessibility may be achieved by context specific requirements, some of which may be found in clauses 5 or 11.

Requirements in clauses 11.1 to 11.5 apply to software:

* that is not a web page;
* not embedded in web pages nor used in the rendering or functioning of the page.

Clause 9 provides requirements for software that is in web pages or that is embedded in web pages and that is used in the rendering or that is intended to be rendered together with the web page in which it is embedded.

Some requirements in clauses 11.1 to 11.5 have different versions for open or closed functionality. In those cases, the corresponding clause will be divided into two subclauses.

The success criteria set out in clauses 11.1 to 11.5 are intended to harmonize with the W3C Working Group Note [i.26] produced by the W3C's [WCAG2ICT Task Force](http://www.w3.org/WAI/GL/WCAG2ICT-TF/).

NOTE 5: Software that provides a user interface includes its own content. Some examples of content in software include: the controls and text displayed in a menu bar of a graphical user interface application, images that appear in a toolbar, prompts spoken in an auditory user interface, other user interaction controls, and other text, graphics or material that is not loaded from outside the software.

NOTE 6: "Void" clauses have been inserted in order to maintain alignment of the numbering in clauses 9, 10 and 11.

## 11.1 Perceivable

### 11.1.1 Text alternatives

#### 11.1.1.1 Non-text content

##### 11.1.1.1.1 Non-text content (open functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface and that supports access to assistive technologies for screen reading, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.1.1 Non-text Content](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#non-text-content).

NOTE: CAPTCHAs do not currently appear outside of the Web. However, if they do appear, this guidance is accurate.

##### 11.1.1.1.2 Non-text content (closed functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface which is closed to assistive technologies for screen reading, it shall meet requirement 5.1.3.6 (Speech output for non-text content).

### 11.1.2 Time-based media

#### 11.1.2.1 Audio-only and video-only (pre-recorded)

##### 11.1.2.1.1 Audio-only and video-only (pre-recorded - open functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface and that supports access to assistive technologies for screen reading and where pre-recorded auditory information is not needed to enable the use of closed functions of ICT, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.1 Audio-only and Video-only (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-only-and-video-only-prerecorded).

NOTE: The alternative can be provided directly in the software - or provided in an alternate version that meets the success criterion.

##### 11.1.2.1.2 Audio-only and video-only (pre-recorded - closed functionality)

###### 11.1.2.1.2.1 Pre-recorded audio-only (closed functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface which is closed to assistive technologies for screen reading and where pre-recorded auditory information is needed to enable the use of closed functions of ICT, the functionality of software that provides a user interface shall meet requirement 5.1.5 (Visual output for auditory information).

###### 11.1.2.1.2.2 Pre-recorded video-only (closed functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface which is closed to assistive technologies for screen reading, it shall meet requirement 5.1.3.7 (Speech output for video information).

#### 11.1.2.2 Captions (pre-recorded)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.2 Captions (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#captions-prerecorded).

NOTE: The WCAG 2.1 definition of "captions" notes that "in some countries, captions are called subtitles". They are also sometimes referred to as "subtitles for the hearing impaired". Per the definition in WCAG 2.1, to meet this success criterion, whether called captions or subtitles, they would have to provide "synchronized visual and / or text alternative for both speech and non-speech audio information needed to understand the media content" where non-speech information includes "sound effects, music, laughter, speaker identification and location".

#### 11.1.2.3 Audio description or media alternative (pre-recorded)

##### 11.1.2.3.1 Audio description or media alternative (pre-recorded - open functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface and that supports access to assistive technologies for screen reading, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.3 Audio Description or Media Alternative (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-description-or-media-alternative-prerecorded).

NOTE 1: The WCAG 2.1 definition of "audio description" says that "audio description" is "also called 'video description' and 'descriptive narration'".

NOTE 2: Secondary or alternate audio tracks are commonly used for this purpose.

##### 11.1.2.3.2 Audio description or media alternative (pre-recorded - closed functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface which is closed to assistive technologies for screen reading, it shall meet requirement 5.1.3.7 (Speech output for video information).

#### 11.1.2.4 Captions (live)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.4 Captions (Live)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#captions-live).

NOTE: The WCAG 2.1 definition of "captions" notes that "in some countries, captions are called subtitles". They are also sometimes referred to as "subtitles for the hearing impaired". Per the definition in WCAG 2.1, to meet this success criterion, whether called captions or subtitles, they would have to provide "synchronized visual and / or text alternative for both speech and non-speech audio information needed to understand the media content" where non-speech information includes "sound effects, music, laughter, speaker identification and location".

#### 11.1.2.5 Audio description (pre-recorded)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.5 Audio Description (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-description-prerecorded).

NOTE 1: The WCAG 2.1 definition of "audio description" says that audio description is "Also called 'video description' and 'descriptive narration'".

NOTE 2: Secondary or alternate audio tracks are commonly used for this purpose.

### 11.1.3 Adaptable

#### 11.1.3.1 Info and relationships

##### 11.1.3.1.1 Info and relationships (open functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface and that supports access to assistive technologies for screen reading, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.1 Info and Relationships](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#info-and-relationships).

NOTE: In software, programmatic determinability is best achieved through the use of accessibility services provided by platform software to enable interoperability between software and assistive technologies and accessibility features of software. (see clause 11.5 Interoperability with assistive technology).

##### 11.1.3.1.2 Info and relationships (closed functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface which is closed to assistive technologies for screen reading and where information is displayed on the screen, the ICT should provide auditory information that allows the user to correlate the audio with the information displayed on the screen.

NOTE 1: Many people who are legally blind still have visual ability, and use aspects of the visual display even if it cannot be fully comprehended. An audio alternative that is both complete and complementary includes all visual information such as focus or highlighting, so that the audio can be correlated with information that is visible on the screen at any point in time.

NOTE 2: Examples of auditory information that allows the user to correlate the audio with the information displayed on the screen include structure and relationships conveyed through presentation.

#### 11.1.3.2 Meaningful sequence

##### 11.1.3.2.1 Meaningful sequence (open functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface and that supports access to assistive technologies for screen reading, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.2 Meaningful Sequence](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#meaningful-sequence).

##### 11.1.3.2.2 Meaningful sequence (closed functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface which is closed to assistive technologies for screen reading and where information is displayed on the screen, the ICT should provide auditory information that allows the user to correlate the audio with the information displayed on the screen.

NOTE 1: Many people who are legally blind still have visual ability, and use aspects of the visual display even if it cannot be fully comprehended. An audio alternative that is both complete and complementary includes all visual information such as focus or highlighting, so that the audio can be correlated with information that is visible on the screen at any point in time.

NOTE 2: Examples of auditory information that allows the user to correlate the audio with the information displayed on the screen include structure and relationships conveyed through presentation.

#### 11.1.3.3 Sensory characteristics

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.3 Sensory Characteristics](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#sensory-characteristics).

#### 11.1.3.4 Orientation

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.4 Orientation](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#orientation).

#### 11.1.3.5 Identify input purpose

##### 11.1.3.5.1 Identify input purpose (open functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface and supports access to assistive technologies for screen reading, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.5 Identify Input Purpose](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#identify-input-purpose).

##### 11.1.3.5.2 Identify input purpose (closed functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface and is closed to assistive technologies, in at least one mode of operation the ICT shall present to the user, in an audio form, the purpose of each input field collecting information about the user when the input field serves a purpose identified in the [WCAG 2.1 Input Purposes for User Interface Components](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#input-purposes) section.

### 11.1.4 Distinguishable

#### 11.1.4.1 Use of colour

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.1 Use of Color](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#use-of-color).

#### 11.1.4.2 Audio control

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 11.1.

Table 11.1: Software success criterion: Audio control

|  |
| --- |
| If any audio in a software plays automatically for more than 3 seconds, either a mechanism is available to pause or stop the audio, or a mechanism is available to control audio volume independently from the overall system volume level. |
| NOTE 1: Since any part of a software that does not meet this success criterion can interfere with a user's ability to use the whole software, all content in the software (whether or not it is used to meet other success criteria) shall meet this success criterion. |
| NOTE 2: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.2 Audio Control](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-control) replacing "on a Web page" with "in a software", "any content" with "any part of a software", "whole page" with "whole software", "on the Web page" with "in the software", removing "See Conformance Requirement 5: Non-Interference" and adding note 1. |

#### 11.1.4.3 Contrast (minimum)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.3 Contrast (Minimum)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#contrast-minimum).

#### 11.1.4.4 Resize text

##### 11.1.4.4.1 Resize text (open functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface and that supports access to enlargement features of platform or assistive technology, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.4 Resize Text](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#resize-text).

NOTE 1: Content for which there are software players, viewers or editors with a 200 percent zoom feature would automatically meet this success criterion when used with such players, unless the content will not work with zoom.

NOTE 2: This success criterion is about the ability to allow users to enlarge the text on screen at least up to 200 % without needing to use assistive technologies. This means that the application provides some means for enlarging the text 200 % (zoom or otherwise) without loss of content or functionality or that the application works with the platform features that meet this requirement.

##### 11.1.4.4.2 Resize text (closed functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface which is not able to access the enlargement features of platform or assistive technology, it shall meet requirement 5.1.4 (Functionality closed to text enlargement).

NOTE: Because the text rendering support in a closed environment may be more limited than the support found in user agents for the Web, meeting 11.1.4.4.2 in a closed environment may place a much heavier burden on the content author.

#### 11.1.4.5 Images of text

##### 11.1.4.5.1 Images of text (open functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface and that supports access to assistive technologies for screen reading, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.5 Images of Text](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#images-of-text).

##### 11.1.4.5.2 Images of text (closed functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface which is closed to assistive technologies for screen reading, it shall meet requirement 5.1.3.6 (Speech output for non-text content).

#### 11.1.4.6 Void

#### 11.1.4.7 Void

#### 11.1.4.8 Void

#### 11.1.4.9 Void

#### 11.1.4.10 Reflow

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 11.2.

Table 11.2: Software success criterion: Reflow

|  |
| --- |
| Content can be presented without loss of information or functionality, and without requiring scrolling in two dimensions for:   * Vertical scrolling content at a width equivalent to 320 CSS pixels; * Horizontal scrolling content at a height equivalent to 256 CSS pixels;   Except for parts of the content which require two-dimensional layout for usage or meaning. |
| NOTE 1: 320 CSS pixels is equivalent to a starting viewport width of 1 280 CSS pixels wide at 400 % zoom. For non-web software which are designed to scroll horizontally (e.g. with vertical text), the 256 CSS pixels is equivalent to a starting viewport height of 1 024 px at 400 % zoom. |
| NOTE 2: Examples of content which require two-dimensional layout are images, maps, diagrams, video, games, presentations, data tables, and interfaces where it is necessary to keep toolbars in view while manipulating content. |
| NOTE 3: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.10 Reflow](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#reflow) replacing the original WCAG 2.1 notes with notes 1 and 2, above. |

#### 11.1.4.11 Non-text contrast

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.11 Non-text Contrast](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#non-text-contrast).

#### 11.1.4.12 Text spacing

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface and that does not have a fixed size content layout area that is essential to the information being conveyed, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.12 Text spacing](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#text-spacing).

#### 11.1.4.13 Content on hover or focus

Where ICT is a non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.13 Content on hover or focus](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#content-on-hover-or-focus).

## 11.2 Operable

### 11.2.1 Keyboard accessible

#### 11.2.1.1 Keyboard

##### 11.2.1.1.1 Keyboard (open functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface and that supports access to keyboards or a keyboard interface, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.1.1 Keyboard](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#keyboard).

NOTE: This does not imply that software is required to directly support a keyboard or "keyboard interface". Nor does it imply that software is required to provide a soft keyboard. Underlying platform software may provide device independent input services to applications that enable operation via a keyboard. Software that supports operation via such platform device independent services would be operable by a keyboard and would comply.

##### 11.2.1.1.2 Keyboard (closed functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface which is closed to keyboards or keyboard interface, it shall meet requirement 5.1.6.1 (Operation without keyboard interface: Closed functionality).

#### 11.2.1.2 No keyboard trap

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 11.3.

Table 11.3: Software success criterion: No keyboard trap

|  |
| --- |
| If keyboard focus can be moved to a component of the software using a keyboard interface, then focus can be moved away from that component using only a keyboard interface, and, if it requires more than unmodified arrow or tab keys or other standard exit methods, the user is advised of the method for moving focus away. |
| NOTE 1: Since any part of a software that does not meet this success criterion can interfere with a user's ability to use the whole software, it is necessary for all content in the software (whether or not it is used to meet other success criteria) to meet this success criterion. |
| NOTE 2: Standard exit methods may vary by platform. For example, on many desktop platforms, the Escape key is a standard method for exiting. |
| NOTE 3: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.1.2 No Keyboard Trap](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#no-keyboard-trap) replacing "content", "page" and "Web page" with "software", removing "See Conformance Requirement 5: Non-Interference" and with the addition of note 2 above " and with note 1 above re-drafted to avoid the use of the word "shall". |

#### 11.2.1.3 Void

#### 11.2.1.4 Character key shortcuts

##### 11.2.1.4.1 Character key shortcuts (open functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.1.4 Character Key Shortcuts](https://w3c.github.io/wcag21/guidelines/#character-key-shortcuts).

##### 11.2.1.4.2 Character key shortcuts (closed functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface which is closed to keyboards or keyboard interface, it shall meet requirement 5.1.6.1 (Operation without keyboard interface: Closed functionality).

### 11.2.2 Enough time

#### 11.2.2.1 Timing adjustable

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 11.4.

Table 11.4: Software success criterion: Timing adjustable

|  |
| --- |
| For each time limit that is set by the software, at least one of the following is true:   * **Turn off:** The user is allowed to turn off the time limit before encountering it; or * **Adjust:** The user is allowed to adjust the time limit before encountering it over a wide range that is at least ten times the length of the default setting; or * **Extend:** The user is warned before time expires and given at least 20 seconds to extend the time limit with a simple action (for example, "press the space bar"), and the user is allowed to extend the time limit at least ten times; or * **Real-time Exception:** The time limit is a required part of a real-time event (for example, an auction), and no alternative to the time limit is possible; or * **Essential Exception:** The time limit is essential and extending it would invalidate the activity; or * **20 Hour Exception:** The time limit is longer than 20 hours. |
| NOTE 1: This success criterion helps ensure that users can complete tasks without unexpected changes in content or context that are a result of a time limit. This success criterion should be considered in conjunction with [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.2.1](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#on-focus), which puts limits on changes of content or context as a result of user action. |
| NOTE 2: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.2.1 Timing Adjustable](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#timing-adjustable) replacing "the content" with "software" and with the words "WCAG 2.1" added before the word "Success Criterion" in note 1 above. |

#### 11.2.2.2 Pause, stop, hide

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 11.5.

Table 11.5: Software success criterion: Pause, stop, hide

|  |
| --- |
| For moving, blinking, scrolling, or auto-updating information, all of the following are true:   * **Moving, blinking, scrolling:** For any moving, blinking or scrolling information that (1) starts automatically, (2) lasts more than five seconds, and (3) is presented in parallel with other content, there is a mechanism for the user to pause, stop, or hide it unless the movement, blinking, or scrolling is part of an activity where it is essential; and * **Auto-updating:** For any auto-updating information that (1) starts automatically and (2) is presented in parallel with other content, there is a mechanism for the user to pause, stop, or hide it or to control the frequency of the update unless the auto-updating is part of an activity where it is essential. |
| NOTE 1: For requirements related to flickering or flashing content, refer to [WCAG 2.1 Guideline 2.3](https://w3c.github.io/wcag21/guidelines/#seizures-and-physical-reactions). |
| NOTE 2: This success criteria is applicable to all content in the software (whether or not there is an alternate accessible mode of operation of the software) since any part of a software that does not meet this success criterion can interfere with a user's ability to use the whole software (including a user interface element that enables the user to activate the alternate accessible mode of operation). |
| NOTE 3: Content that is updated periodically by software or that is streamed to the user agent is not required to preserve or present information that is generated or received between the initiation of the pause and resuming presentation, as this may not be technically possible, and in many situations could be misleading to do so. |
| NOTE 4: An animation that occurs as part of a preload phase or similar situation can be considered essential if interaction cannot occur during that phase for all users and if not indicating progress could confuse users or cause them to think that content was frozen or broken. |
| NOTE 5: This is to be applied to all content. Any content, whether informative or decorative, that is updated automatically, blinks, or moves may create an accessibility barrier. |
| NOTE 6: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.2.2 Pause, Stop, Hide](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#pause-stop-hide) replacing "page" and "Web page" with "software", removing "See Conformance Requirement 5: Non-Interference" in note 2 of the success criterion, with the words "WCAG 2.1" added before the word "Guideline" in note 1 above, with note 2 above re-drafted to avoid the use of the word "must" and with the addition of note 5 above. |

### 11.2.3 Seizures and physical reactions

#### 11.2.3.1 Three flashes or below threshold

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 11.6.

Table 11.6: Software success criterion: Three flashes or below threshold

|  |
| --- |
| Software does not contain anything that flashes more than three times in any one second period, or the flash is below the general flash and red flash thresholds. |
| NOTE 1: This success criteria is applicable to all content in the software (whether or not there is an alternate accessible mode of operation of the software) since any part of a software that does not meet this success criterion can interfere with a user's ability to use the whole software (including a user interface element that enables the user to activate the alternate accessible mode of operation). |
| NOTE 2: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.3.1 Three Flashes or Below Threshold](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#three-flashes-or-below-threshold) replacing "Web pages" with "software", "the whole page" with "the whole software", "the Web page" with "the software" and removing "See Conformance Requirement 5: Non-Interference" and with note 1 above re-drafted to avoid the use of the word "must". |

### 11.2.4 Navigable

#### 11.2.4.1 Void

#### 11.2.4.2 Void

#### 11.2.4.3 Focus order

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 11.7.

Table 11.7: Software success criterion: Focus order

|  |
| --- |
| If software can be navigated sequentially and the navigation sequences affect meaning or operation, focusable components receive focus in an order that preserves meaning and operability. |
| NOTE: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.3 Focus order](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#focus-order) replacing "Web page" with "software". |

#### 11.2.4.4 Link purpose (in context)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.4 Link Purpose (In Context)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#link-purpose-in-context).

#### 11.2.4.5 Void

#### 11.2.4.6 Headings and labels

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.6 Headings and Labels](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#headings-and-labels).

NOTE: In software, headings and labels are used to describe sections of content and controls respectively. In some cases it may be unclear whether a piece of static text is a heading or a label. But whether treated as a label or a heading, the requirement is the same: that if they are present they describe the topic or purpose of the item(s) they are associated with.

#### 11.2.4.7 Focus visible

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.7 Focus Visible](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#focus-visible).

### 11.2.5 Input modalities

#### 11.2.5.1 Pointer gestures

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 11.8.

Table 11.8: Software success criterion: Pointer gestures

|  |
| --- |
| All functionality that uses multipoint or path-based gestures for operation can be operated with a single pointer without a path-based gesture, unless a multipoint or path-based gesture is essential. |
| NOTE 1: This requirement applies to non-web software that interprets pointer actions (i.e. this does not apply to actions that are required to operate the user agent or assistive technology). |
| NOTE 2: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.5.1 Pointer Gestures](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#pointer-gestures) replacing the original WCAG 2.1 note with note 1 above. |

#### 11.2.5.2 Pointer cancellation

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 11.9.

Table 11.9: Software success criterion: Pointer cancellation

|  |
| --- |
| For functionality that can be operated using a single pointer, at least one of the following is true:   * No Down-Event: The down-event of the pointer is not used to execute any part of the function; * Abort or Undo: Completion of the function is on the up-event, and a mechanism is available to abort the function before completion or to undo the function after completion; * Up Reversal: The up-event reverses any outcome of the preceding down-event; * Essential: Completing the function on the down-event is essential. |
| NOTE 1: Functions that emulate a keyboard or numeric keypad key press are considered essential. |
| NOTE 2: This requirement applies to non-web software that interprets pointer actions (i.e. this does not apply to actions that are required to operate the user agent or assistive technology). |
| NOTE 3: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.5.2 Pointer Cancellation](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#pointer-cancellation) replacing the original WCAG 2.1 note with notes 1 and 2 above. |

#### 11.2.5.3 Label in name

#### 11.2.5.3.1 Label in name (open functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.5.3 Label in Name](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#label-in-name).

#### 11.2.5.3.2 Label in name (closed functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface which is closed to assistive technologies for screen reading, it should meet requirement 5.1.3.3 (Auditory output correlation).

#### 11.2.5.4 Motion actuation

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.5.4 Motion Actuation](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#motion-actuation).

## 11.3 Understandable

### 11.3.1 Readable

#### 11.3.1.1 Language of software

##### 11.3.1.1.1 Language of software (open functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface and that supports access to assistive technologies for screen reading, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 11.10.

Table 11.10: Software success criterion: Language of software

|  |
| --- |
| The default human language of software can be programmatically determined. |
| NOTE 1: Where software platforms provide a "locale / language" setting, applications that use that setting and render their interface in that "locale / language" would comply with this success criterion. Applications that do not use the platform "locale / language" setting but instead use an accessibility-supported method for exposing the human language of the software would also comply with this success criterion. Applications implemented in technologies where assistive technologies cannot determine the human language and that do not support the platform "locale / language" setting may not be able to meet this success criterion in that locale / language. |
| NOTE 2: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.1.1 Language of page](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#language-of-page), replacing "each web page" with "software" and with the addition of note 1 above. |

##### 11.3.1.1.2 Language of software (closed functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface which is closed to assistive technologies for screen reading, it shall meet requirement 5.1.3.14 (Spoken languages).

#### 11.3.1.2 Void

### 11.3.2 Predictable

#### 11.3.2.1 On focus

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.2.1 On Focus](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#on-focus).

NOTE: Some compound documents and their user agents are designed to provide significantly different viewing and editing functionality depending upon what portion of the compound document is being interacted with (e.g. a presentation that contains an embedded spreadsheet, where the menus and toolbars of the user agent change depending upon whether the user is interacting with the presentation content, or the embedded spreadsheet content). If the user uses a mechanism other than putting focus on that portion of the compound document with which they mean to interact (e.g. by a menu choice or special keyboard gesture), any resulting change of context would not be subject to this success criterion because it was not caused by a change of focus.

#### 11.3.2.2 On input

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.2.2 On Input](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#on-input).

#### 11.3.2.3 Void

#### 11.3.2.4 Void

### 11.3.3 Input assistance

#### 11.3.3.1 Error identification

##### 11.3.3.1.1 Error identification (open functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface and that supports access to assistive technologies for screen reading, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.1 Error Identification](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#error-identification).

##### 11.3.3.1.2 Error Identification (closed functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface which is closed to assistive technologies for screen reading, it shall meet requirement 5.1.3.15 (Non-visual error identification).

#### 11.3.3.2 Labels or instructions

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.2 Labels or Instructions](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#labels-or-instructions).

#### 11.3.3.3 Error suggestion

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.3 Error Suggestion](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#error-suggestion).

#### 11.3.3.4 Error prevention (legal, financial, data)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 11.11.

Table 11.11: Software success criterion: Error prevention (legal, financial, data)

|  |
| --- |
| For software that cause legal commitments or financial transactions for the user to occur, that modify or delete user-controllable data in data storage systems, or that submit user test responses, at least one of the following is true:  1) Reversible: Submissions are reversible.  2) Checked: Data entered by the user is checked for input errors and the user is provided an opportunity to correct them.  3) Confirmed: A mechanism is available for reviewing, confirming, and correcting information before finalizing the submission. |
| NOTE: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.4 Error Prevention (Legal, Financial, Data)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#error-prevention-legal-financial-data) replacing "web pages" with "software". |

## 11.4 Robust

### 11.4.1 Compatible

#### 11.4.1.1 Parsing

##### 11.4.1.1.1 Parsing (open functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface and that supports access to any assistive technologies, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 11.12.

Table 11.12: Software success criterion: Parsing

|  |
| --- |
| For software that uses markup languages, in such a way that the markup is separately exposed and available to assistive technologies and accessibility features of software or to a user-selectable user agent, elements have complete start and end tags, elements are nested according to their specifications, elements do not contain duplicate attributes, and any IDs are unique, except where the specifications allow these features. |
| NOTE 1: Start and end tags that are missing a critical character in their formation, such as a closing angle bracket or a mismatched attribute value quotation mark are not complete. |
| NOTE 2: Markup is not always available to assistive technology or to user selectable user agents such as browsers. In such cases, conformance to this provision would have no impact on accessibility as it can for web content where it is exposed. |
| NOTE 3: Examples of markup that is separately exposed and available to assistive technologies and to user agents include but are not limited to: documents encoded in HTML, ODF, and OOXML. In these examples, the markup can be parsed entirely in two ways: (a) by assistive technologies which may directly open the document, (b) by assistive technologies using DOM APIs of user agents for these document formats. |
| NOTE 4: Examples of markup used internally for persistence of the software user interface that are never exposed to assistive technology include but are not limited to: XUL, GladeXML, and FXML. In these examples assistive technology only interacts with the user interface of generated software. |
| NOTE 5: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 4.1.1 Parsing](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#parsing) replacing "In content implemented using markup languages" with "For software that uses markup languages, in such a way that the markup is separately exposed and available to assistive technologies and accessibility features of software or to a user-selectable user agent" with the addition of notes 2, 3 and 4 above. |

##### 11.4.1.1.2 Parsing (closed functionality)

Not applicable

NOTE: Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface which is closed to all assistive technology it shall not have to meet the "Parsing" success criterion in Table 11.10 because the intent of this success criterion is to provide consistency so that different user agents or assistive technologies will yield the same result.

#### 11.4.1.2 Name, role, value

##### 11.4.1.2.1 Name, role, value (open functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface and that supports access to any assistive technologies, it shall satisfy the success criterion in Table 11.13.

Table 11.13: Software success criterion: Name, role, value

|  |
| --- |
| For all user interface components (including but not limited to: form elements, links and components generated by scripts), the name and role can be programmatically determined; states, properties, and values that can be set by the user can be programmatically set; and notification of changes to these items is available to user agents, including assistive technologies. |
| NOTE 1: This success criterion is primarily for software developers who develop or use custom user interface components. Standard user interface components on most accessibility-supported platforms already meet this success criterion when used according to specification. |
| NOTE 2: For conforming to this success criterion, it is usually best practice for software user interfaces to use the accessibility services provided by platform software. These accessibility services enable interoperability between software user interfaces and both assistive technologies and accessibility features of software in standardised ways. Most platform accessibility services go beyond programmatic exposure of name and role, and programmatic setting of states, properties and values (and notification of same), and specify additional information that could or should be exposed and / or set (for instance, a list of the available actions for a given user interface component, and a means to programmatically execute one of the listed actions). |
| NOTE 3: This success criterion is identical to the [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 4.1.2 Name, Role, Value](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#name-role-value) replacing the original WCAG 2.1 note with: "This success criterion is primarily for software developers who develop or use custom user interface components. Standard user interface components on most accessibility-supported platforms already meet this success criterion when used according to specification." and the addition of note 2 above. |

##### 11.4.1.2.2 Name, role, value (closed functionality)

Not applicable

NOTE: Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface which is closed to all assistive technology it shall not have to meet the "Name, role, value" success criterion in Table 11.11 because this success criterion requires information in a programmatically determinable form.

#### 11.4.1.3 Status messages

##### 11.4.1.3.1 Status messages (open functionality)

Where ICT is non-web software, it shall satisfy [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 4.1.3 Status Messages](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#status-messages).

##### 11.4.1.3.2 Status messages (closed functionality)

Not applicable

## 11.5 Interoperability with assistive technology

### 11.5.1 Closed functionality

Where the closed functionality of software conforms to clause 5.1 (Closed functionality) it shall not be required to conform with clause 11.5.2 to clause 11.5.2.17.

### 11.5.2 Accessibility services

11.5.2.1 Platform accessibility service support for software that provides a user interface

Platform software shall provide a set of documented platform services that enable software that provides a user interface running on the platform software to interoperate with assistive technology.

Platform software should support requirements 11.5.2.5 to 11.5.2.17 except that, where a user interface concept that corresponds to one of the clauses 11.5.2.5 to 11.5.2.17 is not supported within the software environment, these requirements are not applicable. For example, selection attributes from 11.5.2.14 (Modification of focus and selection attributes) may not exist in environments that do not allow selection, which is most commonly associated with copy and paste.

NOTE 1: These define the minimum functionality of software providing user interfaces when using platform services.

NOTE 2: In some platforms these services may be called accessibility services, but in some other platforms these services may be provided as part of the user interface services.

NOTE 3: User interface services that provide accessibility support by default are considered to be part of the services provided to conform to this clause (e.g. the service for creating a new user interface element provides role, state, boundary, name and description).

NOTE 4: To comply with this requirement the platform software can provide its own set of services or expose the services provided by its underlying platform layers, if those services conform to this requirement.

NOTE 5: Within specific programming environments, the technical attributes associated with the user interface properties described in clauses 11.5.2.5 to 11.5.2.17 might have different names than those used within the clauses.

#### 11.5.2.2 Platform accessibility service support for assistive technologies

Platform software shall provide a set of documented platform accessibility services that enable assistive technology to interoperate with software that provides a user interface running on the platform software.

Platform software should support the requirements of clauses 11.5.2.5 to 11.5.2.17 except that, where a user interface concept that corresponds to one of the clauses 11.5.2.5 to 11.5.2.17 is not supported within the software environment, these requirement are not applicable. For example, selection attributes from 11.5.2.14 (Modification of focus and selection attributes) may not exist in environments that do not allow selection, which is most commonly associated with copy and paste.

NOTE 1: These define the minimum functionality available to assistive technologies when using platform services.

NOTE 2: The definition of platform in clause 3.1 applies to software that provides services to other software, including but not limited to, operating systems, web browsers, virtual machines.

NOTE 3: In some platforms these services may be called accessibility services, but in some other platforms these services may be provided as part of the user interface services.

NOTE 4: Typically these services belong to the same set of services that are described in clause 11.5.2.1.

NOTE 5: To comply with this requirement the platform software can provide its own set of services or expose the services provided by its underlying platform layers, if those services conform to this requirement.

#### 11.5.2.3 Use of accessibility services

Where the software provides a user interface it shall use the applicable documented platform accessibility services. If the documented platform accessibility services do not allow the software to meet the applicable requirements of clauses 11.5.2.5 to 11.5.2.17, then software that provides a user interface shall use other documented services to interoperate with assistive technology.

NOTE: The term "documented platform accessibility services" refers to the set of services provided by the platform according to clauses 11.5.2.1 and 11.5.2.2.

It is best practice to develop software using toolkits that automatically implement the underlying platform accessibility services.

#### 11.5.2.4 Assistive technology

Where the ICT is assistive technology it shall use the documented platform accessibility services.

NOTE 1: The term "documented platform accessibility services" refers to the set of services provided by the platform according to clauses 11.5.2.1 and 11.5.2.2.

NOTE 2: Assistive technology can also use other documented accessibility services.

#### 11.5.2.5 Object information

Where the software provides a user interface it shall, by using the services as described in clause 11.5.2.3, make the user interface elements' role, state(s), boundary, name, and description programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.

#### 11.5.2.6 Row, column, and headers

Where the software provides a user interface it shall, by using the services as described in clause 11.5.2.3, make the row and column of each cell in a data table, including headers of the row and column if present, programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.

#### 11.5.2.7 Values

Where the software provides a user interface, it shall, by using the services as described in clause 11.5.2.3, make the current value of a user interface element and any minimum or maximum values of the range, if the user interface element conveys information about a range of values, programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.

#### 11.5.2.8 Label relationships

Where the software provides a user interface it shall expose the relationship that a user interface element has as a label for another element, or of being labelled by another element, using the services as described in clause 11.5.2.3, so that this information is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.

#### 11.5.2.9 Parent-child relationships

Where the software provides a user interface it shall, by using the services as described in clause 11.5.2.3, make the relationship between a user interface element and any parent or children elements programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.

#### 11.5.2.10 Text

Where the software provides a user interface it shall, by using the services as described in clause 11.5.2.3, make the text contents, text attributes, and the boundary of text rendered to the screen programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.

#### 11.5.2.11 List of available actions

Where the software provides a user interface it shall, by using the services as described in clause 11.5.2.3, make a list of available actions that can be executed on a user interface element, programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.

#### 11.5.2.12 Execution of available actions

Where permitted by security requirements, software that provides a user interface shall, by using the services as described in clause 11.5.2.3, allow the programmatic execution of the actions exposed according to clause 11.5.2.11 by assistive technologies.

NOTE 1: In some cases the security requirements imposed on a software product may forbid external software from interfering with the ICT product. Examples of systems under strict security requirements are systems dealing with intelligence activities, cryptologic activities related to national security, command and control of military forces.

NOTE 2: Assistive technologies may be required to maintain the same level of security as the standard input mechanisms supported by the platform.

#### 11.5.2.13 Tracking of focus and selection attributes

Where software provides a user interface it shall, by using the services as described in clause 11.5.2.3, make information and mechanisms necessary to track focus, text insertion point, and selection attributes of user interface elements programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.

#### 11.5.2.14 Modification of focus and selection attributes

Where permitted by security requirements, software that provides a user interface shall, by using the services as described in clause 11.5.2.3, allow assistive technologies to programmatically modify focus, text insertion point, and selection attributes of user interface elements where the user can modify these items.

NOTE 1: In some cases the security requirements imposed on a software product may forbid external software from interfering with the ICT product and so this requirement would not apply. Examples of systems under strict security requirements are systems dealing with intelligence activities, cryptologic activities related to national security, command and control of military forces.

NOTE 2: Assistive technologies may be required to maintain the same level of security as the standard input mechanisms supported by the platform.

#### 11.5.2.15 Change notification

Where software provides a user interface it shall, by using the services as described in clause 11.5.2.3, notify assistive technologies about changes in those programmatically determinable attributes of user interface elements that are referenced in requirements 11.5.2.5 to 11.5.2.11 and 11.5.2.13.

#### 11.5.2.16 Modifications of states and properties

Where permitted by security requirements, software that provides a user interface shall, by using the services as described in clause 11.5.2.3, allow assistive technologies to programmatically modify states and properties of user interface elements, where the user can modify these items.

NOTE 1: In some cases the security requirements imposed on a software product may forbid external software from interfering with the ICT product and so this requirement would not apply. Examples of systems under strict security requirements are systems dealing with intelligence activities, cryptologic activities related to national security, command and control of military forces.

NOTE 2: Assistive technologies may be required to maintain the same level of security as the standard input mechanisms supported by the platform.

#### 11.5.2.17 Modifications of values and text

Where permitted by security requirements, software that provides a user interface shall, by using the services as described in clause 11.5.2.3, allow assistive technologies to modify values and text of user interface elements using the input methods of the platform, where a user can modify these items without the use of assistive technology.

NOTE 1: In some cases the security requirements imposed on a software product may forbid external software from interfering with the ICT product and so this requirement would not apply. Examples of systems under strict security requirements are systems dealing with intelligence activities, cryptologic activities related to national security, command and control of military forces.

NOTE 2: Assistive technologies may be required to maintain the same level of security as the standard input mechanisms supported by the platform.

## 11.6 Documented accessibility usage

### 11.6.1 User control of accessibility features

Where software is a platform it shall provide sufficient modes of operation for user control over those platform accessibility features documented as intended for users.

### 11.6.2 No disruption of accessibility features

Where software provides a user interface it shall not disrupt those documented accessibility features that are defined in platform documentation except when requested to do so by the user during the operation of the software.

## 11.7 User preferences

Where software is not designed to be isolated from its platform, and provides a user interface, that user interface shall follow the values of the user preferences for platform settings for: units of measurement, colour, contrast, font type, font size, and focus cursor except where they are overridden by the user.

NOTE 1: Software that is isolated from its underlying platform has no access to user settings in the platform and thus cannot adhere to them.

NOTE 2: For web content, the underlying platform is the user agent.

NOTE 3: This does not preclude the software from having additional values for a setting as long as there is one mode where the application will follow the system settings even if more restricted.

## 11.8 Authoring tools

### 11.8.0 General (Informative)

For those creating web content authoring tools, ATAG 2.0 provides information that can be of interest to those who want to go beyond these requirements.

### 11.8.1 Content technology

Authoring tools shall conform to clauses 11.8.2 to 11.8.5 to the extent that information required for accessibility is supported by the format used for the output of the authoring tool.

### 11.8.2 Accessible content creation

Authoring tools shall enable and guide the production of content that conforms to clauses 9 (Web content) or 10  
(Non-Web content) as applicable.

NOTE: Authoring tools may rely on additional tools where conformance with specific requirements is not achievable by a single tool. For example, a video editing tool may enable the creation of video files for distribution via broadcast television and the web, but authoring of caption files for multiple formats may be provided by a different tool.

### 11.8.3 Preservation of accessibility information in transformations

If the authoring tool provides restructuring transformations or re-coding transformations, then accessibility information shall be preserved in the output if equivalent mechanisms exist in the content technology of the output.

NOTE 1: Restructuring transformations are transformations in which the content technology stays the same, but the structural features of the content are changed (e.g. linearizing tables, splitting a document into pages).

NOTE 2: Re-coding transformations are transformations in which the technology used to encode the content is changed.

### 11.8.4 Repair assistance

If the accessibility checking functionality of an authoring tool can detect that content does not meet a requirement of clauses 9 (Web) or 10 (Non-web documents) as applicable, then the authoring tool shall provide repair suggestion(s).

NOTE: This does not preclude automated and semi-automated repair which is possible (and encouraged) for many types of content accessibility problems.

### 11.8.5 Templates

When an authoring tool provides templates, at least one template that supports the creation of content that conforms to the requirements of clauses 9 (Web) or 10 (Non-web documents) as applicable shall be available and identified as such.

# 12 Documentation and support services

## 12.1 Product documentation

### 12.1.1 Accessibility and compatibility features

Product documentation provided with the ICT whether provided separately or integrated within the ICT shall list and explain how to use the accessibility and compatibility features of the ICT.

NOTE: Accessibility and compatibility features include accessibility features that are built-in and accessibility features that provide compatibility with assistive technology.

### 12.1.2 Accessible documentation

Product documentation provided with the ICT shall be made available in at least one of the following electronic formats:

1. a Web format that conforms to the requirements of clause 9, or
2. a non-web format that conforms to the requirements of clause 10.

NOTE 1: This does not preclude the possibility of also providing the product documentation in other formats (electronic or printed) that are not accessible.

NOTE 2: It also does not preclude the possibility of providing alternate formats that meet the needs of some specific type of users (e.g. Braille documents for blind people or easy-to-read information for persons with cognitive impairments).

NOTE 3: Where documentation is incorporated into the ICT, the documentation falls under the requirements for accessibility in the present document.

NOTE 4: A user agent that supports automatic media conversion would be beneficial to enhancing accessibility.

## 12.2 Support services

### 12.2.1 General (informative)

ICT support services include, but are not limited to: help desks, call centres, technical support, relay services and training services.

### 12.2.2 Information on accessibility and compatibility features

ICT support services shall provide information on the accessibility and compatibility features that are mentioned in the product documentation.

NOTE: Accessibility and compatibility features include accessibility features that are built-in and accessibility features that provide compatibility with assistive technology.

### 12.2.3 Effective communication

ICT support services shall accommodate the communication needs of individuals with disabilities either directly or through a referral point.

### 12.2.4 Accessible documentation

Documentation provided by support services shall be made available in at least one of the following electronic formats:

1. a Web format that conforms to clause 9; or
2. a non-web format that conforms to clause 10.

NOTE 1: This does not preclude the possibility of also providing the documentation in other formats (electronic or printed) that are not accessible.

NOTE 2: It also does not preclude the possibility of providing alternate formats that meet the needs of some specific type of users (e.g. Braille documents for blind people or easy-to-read information for persons with cognitive impairments).

NOTE 3: Where the support documentation is incorporated into the ICT, the documentation falls under the requirements for accessibility in the present document.

NOTE 4: A user agent that supports automatic media conversion would be beneficial to enhancing accessibility.

# 13 ICT providing relay or emergency service access

## 13.1 Relay services requirements

### 13.1.1 General (informative)

Relay services enable users of different modes of communication e.g. text, sign, speech, to interact remotely through ICT with two-way communication by providing conversion between the modes of communication, normally by a human operator.

It is best practice to meet the applicable relay service requirements of ETSI ES 202 975 [i.5].

### 13.1.2 Text relay services

Where ICT is intended to provide a text relay service, the text relay service shall enable text users and speech users to interact by providing conversion between the two modes of communication.

### 13.1.3 Sign relay services

Where ICT is intended to provide a sign relay service, the sign relay service shall enable sign language users and speech users to interact by providing conversion between the two modes of communication.

NOTE: Sign relay services are also sometimes referred to as sign language relay services or video relay services.

### 13.1.4 Lip-reading relay services

Where ICT is intended to provide a lip-reading relay service, the lip-reading service shall enable lip-readers and voice telephone users to interact by providing conversion between the two modes of communication.

### 13.1.5 Captioned telephony services

Where ICT is intended to provide a captioned telephony service, the captioned telephony service shall assist a deaf or hard of hearing user in a spoken dialogue by providing text captions translating the incoming part of the conversation.

### 13.1.6 Speech to speech relay services

Where ICT is intended to provide a speech to speech relay service, the speech to speech relay service shall enable speech or cognitively impaired telephone users and any other user to communicate by providing assistance between them.

## 13.2 Access to relay services

Where ICT systems support two-way communication, and the system is specified for use with relay services, access to those relay services shall not be prevented for outgoing and incoming calls involving: voice, RTT, or video, either singly or in combinations supported by both the relay service and the ICT system.

NOTE 1: The purpose of this requirement is to achieve functionally equivalent communication access by persons with disabilities.

NOTE 2: The system may be specified as needing to work with relay services by, for example: procurers, regulators, or product specifications.

## 13.3 Access to emergency services

Where ICT systems support two-way communication, and the system is specified for use with emergency services, access to those emergency services shall not be prevented for outgoing and incoming calls involving: voice, RTT, or video, either singly or in combinations supported by both the emergency service and the ICT system.

NOTE 1: The purpose of this requirement is to achieve functionally equivalent communication access to the emergency service by persons with disabilities.

NOTE 2: The system may be specified as needing to work with emergency services by, for example: procurers, regulators, or product specifications.

# 14 Conformance

Conformance to the present document is achieved by meeting all of the “shall” requirements.

All clauses except those in clause 12 are self-scoping. This means they are introduced with the phrase 'Where ICT <pre condition>'. A requirement is met either when the pre-condition is true and the corresponding test (in Annex C) is passed, or when the pre-condition is false (i.e. the pre-condition is not met or not valid).

ICT is often comprised of an assembly of two or more items of ICT. In some cases, two or more interoperable items of ICT may together meet more requirements of the standard when one item complements the functionality of the other and the sum together meets more of the accessibility requirements. However, combining two items of ICT, both of which fail to meet any particular requirement, will not lead to a combined ICT system that meets that requirement.

The present document does not prioritize requirements.

NOTE 1: Conformance with the accessibility requirements could be affected by subsequent implementation or maintenance.

NOTE 2: Sampling is frequently required on complex ICT when there are too many instances of the object to be tested. The present document cannot recommend specific ICT evaluation sampling techniques as these are context specific.

# Annex A (informative): Relationship between the present document and the essential requirements of Directive 2016/2102

The present document has been prepared under the Commission's standardisation request C(2017) 2585 final [i.27] to provide one voluntary means of conforming to the essential requirements of Directive 2016/2102 [i.28] on the accessibility of the websites and mobile applications of public sector bodies.

Once the present document is cited in the Official Journal of the European Union under that Directive, conformance with the normative clauses of the present document given in tables A.1 and A.2 confers, within the limits of the scope of the present document, a presumption of conformity with the corresponding essential requirements of that Directive and associated EFTA regulations.

The requirements listed in Table A.1 apply to documents, including forms that are downloaded from the web, and to web pages (as defined in clause 3.1) including:

* documents that are web pages;
* documents that are embedded in web pages and that are used in the rendering or that are intended to be rendered together with the web page in which they are embedded;
* software that is a web page; or
* software that is embedded in web pages and that is used in the rendering or that is intended to be rendered together with the web page in which it is embedded.

The requirements listed in Table A.2 apply to mobile applications that provide a user interface, including content (such as documents and forms) that is in the software or provided by the software.

NOTE 1: According to Directive 2016/2102 [i.28]: "Content of websites and mobile applications includes textual as well as non-textual information, downloadable documents and forms, and two-way interaction such as the processing of digital forms and the completion of authentication, identification and payment processes."

NOTE 2: Annex A is a required element in all Harmonised standards. Its purpose is to explain how the essential requirements of a Directive can be met. Tables A.1 and A.2 are therefore restricted to those elements that relate to the essential requirements of Directive 2016/2102 [i.28].

NOTE 3: Annex A describes how the standard relates to the European Web Accessibility Directive. Apart from the minimum requirements in chapter 9, 10 and 11, some of the requirements in chapter 5, 6, 7 and 12 can also be relevant to fullfill the directive in specific situations. The table in Annex A shows which requirements are relevant.

**Key to Table A.1 and A.2 columns:**

**Requirement:**

**No** A unique identifier for one row of the table which may be used to identify a requirement.

**Essential requirements of Directive**

Identification of article(s) defining the requirement in the Directive.

**Clause(s) of the present document**

Identification of clause(s) defining the requirement in the present document unless another document is referenced explicitly.

**Requirement Conditionality:**

**U/C** "U" indicates that conformance with the clause is unconditionally required.   
"C" indicates that conformance with the clause is required only if the specified condition is met.

**Condition** For conditional requirements this column describes the condition that has to be met for conformance with the clause to be a requirement.

**Assessment:**

Indicates the clause of the present document that contains the relevant assessment method.

Presumption of conformity stays valid only as long as a reference to the present document is maintained in the list published in the Official Journal of the European Union. Users of the present document should consult frequently the latest list published in the Official Journal of the European Union.

Other Union legislation may be applicable to the product(s) falling within the scope of the present document.

Table A.1: Web Content - relationship between the present document and  
the essential requirements of Directive 2016/2102/EU

| Requirement | | | | | | Requirement conditionality | | Assessment |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| No. | Clause of the present document | Essential requirements of Directive 2016/2012 | | | | Conditional or Unconditional | Condition | Clause of the present document | |
| **Perceivable** | **Operable** | **Understandable** | **Robust** |
| 1 | 5.2 Activation of accessibility features | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where web content has documented accessibility features | C.5.2 | |
| 2 | 5.3 Biometrics |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where web content uses biological characteristics | C.5.3 | |
| 3 | 5.4 Preservation of accessibility information during conversion | ✓ |  | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where web content converts information or communication | C.5.4 | |
| 4 | 5.5.1 Means of operation |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where web pages have operable parts | C.5.5.1 | |
| 5 | 5.5.2 Operable parts discernibility | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where web pages have operable parts | C.5.5.2 | |
| 6 | 5.6.1 Tactile or auditory status | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where web pages have has a locking or toggle control | C.5.6.1 | |
| 7 | 5.6.2 Visual status | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where web pages have a locking or toggle control | C.5.6.2 | |
| 8 | 5.7 Key repeat |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where web pages have a key repeat function that cannot be turned off | C.5.7 | |
| 9 | 5.8 Double-strike key acceptance |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where web pages have a keyboard or keypad | C.5.8 | |
| 10 | 5.9 Simultaneous user actions |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where web pages use simultaneous user actions for its operation | C.5.9 | |
| 11 | 6.1 Audio bandwidth for speech | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where web pages provide two-way voice communication | C.6.1 | |
| 12 | 6.2.1 RTT provision | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where web pages support two-way voice communication | C.6.2.1 | |
| 13 | 6.2.2 Display of RTT | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where web pages provide two-way voice communication | C.6.2.2 | |
| 14 | 6.2.3 Interoperability | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where web pages provide two-way voice communication | C.6.2.3 | |
| 15 | 6.2.4 RTT responsiveness | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where web pages provide two-way voice communication | C.6.2.4 | |
| 16 | 6.3 Caller ID | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where web pages provide two-way voice communication | C.6.3 | |
| 17 | 6.5.2 Resolution item a) | ✓ |  | ✓ |  | C | Where web pages provide two-way voice communication | C.6.5.2 | |
| 18 | 6.5.3 Frame rate item a) | ✓ |  | ✓ |  | C | Where web pages provide two-way voice communication | C.6.5.3 | |
| 19 | 7.1.1 Captioning playback | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where web content has video capabilities | C.7.1.1 | |
| 20 | 7.1.2 Captioning synchronization | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where web content has video capabilities | C.7.1.2 | |
| 21 | 7.1.3 Preservation of captioning | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where web content has video capabilities | C.7.1.3 | |
| 22 | 7.2.1 Audio description playback | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where web content has video capabilities | C.7.2.1 | |
| 23 | 7.2.2 Audio description synchronization | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where web content has video capabilities | C.7.2.2 | |
| 24 | 7.2.3 Preservation of audio description | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where web content has video capabilities | C.7.2.3 | |
| 25 | 7.3 User controls for captions and audio description | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where web content has video capabilities | C.7.3 | |
| 26 | 9.1.1.1 Non-text content | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.1.1.1 | |
| 27 | 9.1.2.1 Audio-only and video-only (pre-recorded) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.1.2.1 | |
| 28 | 9.1.2.2 Captions (pre-recorded) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.1.2.2 | |
| 29 | 9.1.2.3 Audio description or media alternative (pre-recorded) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.1.2.3 | |
| 30 | 9.1.2.5 Audio description (pre-recorded) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.1.2.5 | |
| 31 | 9.1.3.1 Info and relationships | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.1.3.1 | |
| 32 | 9.1.3.2 Meaningful sequence | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.1.3.2 | |
| 33 | 9.1.3.3 Sensory characteristics | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.1.3.3 | |
| 34 | 9.1.3.4 Orientation | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.1.3.4 | |
| 35 | 9.1.3.5 Identify input purpose | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.1.3.5 | |
| 36 | 9.1.4.1 Use of colour | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.1.4.1 | |
| 37 | 9.1.4.2 Audio control | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.1.4.2 | |
| 38 | 9.1.4.3 Contrast (minimum) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.1.4.3 | |
| 39 | 9.1.4.4 Resize text | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.1.4.4 | |
| 40 | 9.1.4.5 Images of text | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.1.4.5 | |
| 41 | 9.1.4.10 Reflow | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.1.4.10 | |
| 42 | 9.1.4.11 Non-text contrast | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.1.4.11 | |
| 43 | 9.1.4.12 Text spacing | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.1.4.12 | |
| 44 | 9.1.4.13 Content on hover or focus | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.1.4.13 | |
| 45 | 9.2.1.1 Keyboard |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.2.1.1 | |
| 46 | 9.2.1.2 No keyboard trap |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.2.1.2 | |
| 47 | 9.2.1.4 Character key shortcuts |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.2.1.4 | |
| 48 | 9.2.2.1 Timing adjustable |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.2.2.1 | |
| 49 | 9.2.2.2 Pause, stop, hide |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.2.2.2 | |
| 50 | 9.2.3.1 Three flashes or below threshold |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.2.3.1 | |
| 51 | 9.2.4.1 Bypass blocks |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.2.4.1 | |
| 52 | 9.2.4.2 Page titled |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.2.4.2 | |
| 53 | 9.2.4.3 Focus Order |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.2.4.3 | |
| 54 | 9.2.4.4 Link purpose (in context) |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.2.4.4 | |
| 55 | 9.2.4.5 Multiple ways |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.2.4.5 | |
| 56 | 9.2.4.6 Headings and labels |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.2.4.6 | |
| 57 | 9.2.4.7 Focus visible |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.2.4.7 | |
| 58 | 9.2.5.1 Pointer gestures |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.2.5.1 | |
| 59 | 9.2.5.2 Pointer cancellation |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.2.5.2 | |
| 60 | 9.2.5.3 Label in name |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.2.5.3 | |
| 61 | 9.2.5.4 Motion actuation |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.2.5.4 | |
| 62 | 9.3.1.1 Language of page |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.3.1.1 | |
| 63 | 9.3.1.2 Language of parts |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.3.1.2 | |
| 64 | 9.3.2.1 On focus |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.3.2.1 | |
| 65 | 9.3.2.2 On input |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.3.2.2 | |
| 66 | 9.3.2.3 Consistent navigation |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.3.2.3 | |
| 67 | 9.3.2.4 Consistent identification |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.3.2.4 | |
| 68 | 9.3.3.1 Error identification |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.3.3.1 | |
| 69 | 9.3.3.2 Labels or instructions |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.3.3.2 | |
| 70 | 9.3.3.3 Error suggestion |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.3.3.3 | |
| 71 | 9.3.3.4 Error prevention (legal, financial, data) |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.3.3.4 | |
| 72 | 9.4.1.1 Parsing |  |  |  | ✓ | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.4.1.1 | |
| 73 | 9.4.1.2 Name, role, value |  |  |  | ✓ | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.4.1.2 | |
| 74 | 9.4.1.3 Status messages | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.4.1.3 | |
| 75 | 9.5 WCAG conformance requirements | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where ICT is a web page | C.9.5 | |
| 76 | 10.1.1.1 Non-text content | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.1.1.1 | |
| 77 | 10.1.2.1 Audio-only and video-only (pre-recorded) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.1.2.1 | |
| 78 | 10.1.2.2 Captions (pre-recorded) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.1.2.2 | |
| 79 | 10.1.2.3 Audio description or media alternative (pre-recorded) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.1.2.3 | |
| 80 | 10.1.2.5 Audio description (pre-recorded) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.1.2.5 | |
| 81 | 10.1.3.1 Info and relationships | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.1.3.1 | |
| 82 | 10.1.3.2 Meaningful sequence | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.1.3.2 | |
| 83 | 10.1.3.3 Sensory characteristics | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.1.3.3 | |
| 84 | 10.1.3.4 Orientation | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.1.3.4 | |
| 85 | 10.1.3.5 Identify input purpose | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.1.3.5 | |
| 86 | 10.1.4.1 Use of colour | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.1.4.1 | |
| 87 | 10.1.4.2 Audio control | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.1.4.2 | |
| 88 | 10.1.4.3 Contrast (minimum) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.1.4.3 | |
| 89 | 10.1.4.4 Resize text | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.1.4.4 | |
| 90 | 10.1.4.5 Images of text | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.1.4.5 | |
| 91 | 10.1.4.10 Reflow | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.1.4.10 | |
| 92 | 10.1.4.11 Non-text contrast | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.1.4.11 | |
| 93 | 10.1.4.12 Text spacing | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.1.4.12 | |
| 94 | 10.1.4.13 Content on hover or focus | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.1.4.13 | |
| 95 | 10.2.1.1 Keyboard |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.2.1.1 | |
| 96 | 10.2.1.2 No keyboard trap |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.2.1.2 | |
| 97 | 10.2.1.4 Character key shortcuts |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.2.1.4 | |
| 98 | 10.2.2.1 Timing adjustable |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.2.2.1 | |
| 99 | 10.2.2.2 Pause, stop, hide |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.2.2.2 | |
| 100 | 10.2.3.1 Three flashes or below threshold |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.2.3.1 | |
| 101 | 10.2.4.2 Page titled |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.2.4.2 | |
| 102 | 10.2.4.3 Focus Order |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.2.4.3 | |
| 103 | 10.2.4.4 Link purpose (in context) |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.2.4.4 | |
| 104 | 10.2.4.6 Headings and labels |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.2.4.6 | |
| 105 | 10.2.4.7 Focus visible |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.2.4.7 | |
| 106 | 10.2.5.1 Pointer gestures |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.2.5.1 | |
| 107 | 10.2.5.2 Pointer cancellation |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.2.5.2 | |
| 108 | 10.2.5.3 Label in name |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.2.5.3 | |
| 109 | 10.2.5.4 Motion actuation |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.2.5.4 | |
| 110 | 10.3.1.1 Language of page |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.3.1.1 | |
| 111 | 10.3.1.2 Language of parts |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.3.1.2 | |
| 112 | 10.3.2.1 On focus |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.3.2.1 | |
| 113 | 10.3.2.2 On input |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.3.2.2 | |
| 114 | 10.3.3.1 Error identification |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.3.3.1 | |
| 115 | 10.3.3.2 Labels or instructions |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.3.3.2 | |
| 116 | 10.3.3.3 Error suggestion |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.3.3.3 | |
| 117 | 10.3.3.4 Error prevention (legal, financial, data) |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.3.3.4 | |
| 118 | 10.4.1.1 Parsing |  |  |  | ✓ | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.4.1.1 | |
| 119 | 10.4.1.2 Name, role, value |  |  |  | ✓ | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.4.1.2 | |
| 120 | 10.4.1.3 Status messages | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.4.1.3 | |
| 121 | 10.5 Caption positioning | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |  | C | Where the documents and forms are downloadable from a web page | C.10.5 | |
| 122 | 11.7 User preferences | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | U |  | C.11.7 | |
| 123 | 11.8.1 Content technology | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where web content is an authoring tool | C.11.8.1 | |
| 124 | 11.8.2 Accessible content creation | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where web content is an authoring tool | C.11.8.2 | |
| 125 | 11.8.3 Preservation of accessibility information in transformations | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where web content is an authoring tool | C.11.8.3 | |
| 126 | 11.8.4 Repair assistance | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where web content is an authoring tool | C.11.8.4 | |
| 127 | 11.8.5 Templates | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where web content is an authoring tool | C.11.8.5 | |
| 128 | 12.1.1 Accessibility and compatibility features | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | U |  | C.12.1.1 | |
| 129 | 12.1.2 Accessible documentation | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | U |  | C.12.1.2 | |
| 130 | 12.2.2 Information on accessibility and compatibility features | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | U |  | C.12.2.2 | |
| 131 | 12.2.3 Effective communication | ✓ |  | ✓ |  | U |  | C.12.2.3 | |
| 132 | 12.2.4 Accessible documentation | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | U |  | C.12.2.4 | |

Table A.2: Mobile Applications - relationship between the present document and  
the essential requirements of Directive 2016/2102/EU

| Requirement | | | | | | Requirement conditionality | | Assessment |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| No. | Clause of the present document | Essential requirements of Directive 2016/2012 | | | | Conditional or Unconditional | Condition | Clause of the present document | |
| **Perceivable** | **Operable** | **Understandable** | **Robust** |
| 1 | 5.2 Activation of accessibility features | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where ICT has documented accessibility features | C.5.2 | |
| 2 | 5.3 Biometrics |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT uses biological characteristics | C.5.3 | |
| 3 | 5.4 Preservation of accessibility information during conversion | ✓ |  | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where ICT converts information or communication | C.5.4 | |
| 4 | 5.5.1 Means of operation |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT has operable parts | C.5.5.1 | |
| 5 | 5.5.2 Operable parts discernibility | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT has operable parts | C.5.5.2 | |
| 6 | 5.6.1 Tactile or auditory status | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT has a locking or toggle control | C.5.6.1 | |
| 7 | 5.6.2 Visual status | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT has a locking or toggle control | C.5.6.2 | |
| 8 | 5.7 Key repeat |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT has a key repeat function that cannot be turned off | C.5.7 | |
| 9 | 5.8 Double-strike key acceptance |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT has a keyboard or keypad | C.5.8 | |
| 10 | 5.9 Simultaneous user actions |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT uses simultaneous user actions for its operation | C.5.9 | |
| 11 | 6.1 Audio bandwidth for speech | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT provides two-way voice communication | C.6.1 | |
| 12 | 6.2.1.1 RTT communication | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT supports two-way voice communication | C.6.2.1.1 | |
| 13 | 6.2.1.2 Concurrent voice and text | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT supports two-way voice communication | C.6.2.1.2 | |
| 14 | 6.2.2.1 Visually distinguishable display | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT has RTT send and receive capabilities | C.6.2.2.1 | |
| 15 | 6.2.2.2 Programmatically determinable send and receive direction | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT has RTT send and receive capabilities | C.6.2.2 | |
| 16 | 6.2.3 Interoperability | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT with RTT functionality interoperates with other ICT with RTT functionality | C.6.2.3 | |
| 17 | 6.2.4 RTT responsiveness | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT utilises RTT input | C.6.2.4 | |
| 18 | 6.3 Caller ID | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where ICT provides caller identification, or similar telecommunications functions are provided | C.6.3 | |
| 19 | 6.4 Alternatives to voice-based services | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT provides two-way voice communication | C.6.4 | |
| 20 | 6.5.2 Resolution item a) | ✓ |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT that provides two-way voice communication includes real-time video functionality | C.6.5.2 | |
| 21 | 6.5.3 Frame rate item a) | ✓ |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT that provides two-way voice communication includes real-time video functionality | C.6.5.3 | |
| 22 | 6.5.4 Synchronization between audio and video | ✓ |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT that provides two-way voice communication includes real-time video functionality | C.6.5.4 | |
| 23 | 7.1.1 Captioning playback | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT has video capabilities | C.7.1.1 | |
| 24 | 7.1.2 Captioning synchronization | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT has video capabilities | C.7.1.2 | |
| 25 | 7.1.3 Preservation of captioning | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT has video capabilities | C.7.1.3 | |
| 26 | 7.2.1 Audio description playback | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT has video capabilities | C.7.2.1 | |
| 27 | 7.2.2 Audio description synchronization | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT has video capabilities | C.7.2.2 | |
| 28 | 7.2.3 Preservation of audio description | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT has video capabilities | C.7.2.3 | |
| 29 | 7.3 User controls for captions and audio description | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT has video capabilities | C.7.3 | |
| 30 | 10.1.1.1 Non-text content | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.1.1.1 | |
| 31 | 10.1.2.1 Audio-only and video-only (pre-recorded) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.1.2.1 | |
| 32 | 10.1.2.2 Captions (pre-recorded) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.1.2.2 | |
| 33 | 10.1.2.3 Audio description or media alternative (pre-recorded) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.1.2.3 | |
| 34 | 10.1.2.5 Audio description (pre-recorded) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.1.2.5 | |
| 35 | 10.1.3.1 Info and relationships | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.1.3.1 | |
| 36 | 10.1.3.2 Meaningful sequence | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.1.3.2 | |
| 37 | 10.1.3.3 Sensory characteristics | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.1.3.3 | |
| 38 | 10.1.3.4 Orientation | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.1.3.4 | |
| 39 | 10.1.3.5 Identify input purpose | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.1.3.5 | |
| 40 | 10.1.4.1 Use of colour | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.1.4.1 | |
| 41 | 10.1.4.2 Audio control | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.1.4.2 | |
| 42 | 10.1.4.3 Contrast (minimum) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.1.4.3 | |
| 43 | 10.1.4.4 Resize text | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.1.4.4 | |
| 44 | 10.1.4.5 Images of text | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.1.4.5 | |
| 45 | 10.1.4.10 Reflow | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.1.4.10 | |
| 46 | 10.1.4.11 Non-text contrast | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.1.4.11 | |
| 47 | 10.1.4.12 Text spacing | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.1.4.12 | |
| 48 | 10.1.4.13 Content on hover or focus | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.1.4.13 | |
| 49 | 10.2.1.1 Keyboard |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.2.1.1 | |
| 50 | 10.2.1.2 No keyboard trap |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.2.1.2 | |
| 51 | 10.2.1.4 Character key shortcuts |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.2.1.4 | |
| 52 | 10.2.2.1 Timing adjustable |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.2.2.1 | |
| 53 | 10.2.2.2 Pause, stop, hide |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.2.2.2 | |
| 54 | 10.2.3.1 Three flashes or below threshold |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.2.3.1 | |
| 55 | 10.2.4.2 Page titled |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.2.4.2 | |
| 56 | 10.2.4.3 Focus Order |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.2.4.3 | |
| 57 | 10.2.4.4 Link purpose (in context) |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.2.4.4 | |
| 58 | 10.2.4.6 Headings and labels |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.2.4.6 | |
| 59 | 10.2.4.7 Focus visible |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.2.4.7 | |
| 60 | 10.2.5.1 Pointer gestures |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.2.5.1 | |
| 61 | 10.2.5.2 Pointer cancellation |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.2.5.2 | |
| 62 | 10.2.5.3 Label in name |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.2.5.3 | |
| 63 | 10.2.5.4 Motion actuation |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.2.5.4 | |
| 64 | 10.3.1.1 Language of page |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.3.1.1 | |
| 65 | 10.3.1.2 Language of parts |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.3.1.2 | |
| 66 | 10.3.2.1 On focus |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.3.2.1 | |
| 67 | 10.3.2.2 On input |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.3.2.2 | |
| 68 | 10.3.3.1 Error identification |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.3.3.1 | |
| 69 | 10.3.3.2 Labels or instructions |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.3.3.2 | |
| 70 | 10.3.3.3 Error suggestion |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.3.3.3 | |
| 71 | 10.3.3.4 Error prevention (legal, financial, data) |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.3.3.4 | |
| 72 | 10.4.1.1 Parsing |  |  |  | ✓ | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.4.1.1 | |
| 73 | 10.4.1.2 Name, role, value |  |  |  | ✓ | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.4.1.2 | |
| 74 | 10.4.1.3 Status messages | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where the documents and forms are contained in or provided by the mobile applications | C.10.4.1.3 | |
| 75 | 11.1.1.1.1 Non-text content (open functionality) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.1.1.1 | |
| 76 | 11.1.1.1.2 Non-text content (closed functionality) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.1.1.2 | |
| 77 | 11.1.2.1.1 Audio-only and video-only (pre-recorded - open functionality) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.2.1.1 | |
| 78 | 11.1.2.1.2 Audio-only and video-only (pre-recorded - closed functionality) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.2.1.2 | |
| 79 | 11.1.2.2 Captions (pre-recorded) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.2.2 | |
| 80 | 11.1.2.3.1 Audio description or media alternative (pre-recorded - open functionality) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.2.3.1 | |
| 81 | 11.1.2.3.2 Audio description or media alternative (pre-recorded - closed functionality) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.2.3.2 | |
| 82 | 11.1.2.5 Audio description (pre-recorded) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.2.5 | |
| 83 | 11.1.3.1.1 Info and relationships (open functionality) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.3.1.1 | |
| 84 | 11.1.3.2.1 Meaningful sequence (open functionality) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.3.2.1 | |
| 85 | 11.1.3.3 Sensory characteristics | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.3.3 | |
| 86 | 11.1.3.4 Orientation | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.3.4 | |
| 87 | 11.1.3.5.1 Identify input purpose (open functionality) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.3.5.1 | |
| 88 | 11.1.3.5.2 Identify input purpose (closed functionality) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.3.5.2 | |
| 89 | 11.1.4.1 Use of colour | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.4.1 | |
| 90 | 11.1.4.2 Audio control | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.4.2 | |
| 91 | 11.1.4.3 Contrast (minimum) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.4.3 | |
| 92 | 11.1.4.4.1 Resize text (open functionality) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.4.4.1 | |
| 93 | 11.1.4.4.2 Resize text (closed functionality) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.4.4.2 | |
| 94 | 11.1.4.5.1 Images of text (open functionality) | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.4.5.1 | |
| 95 | 11.1.4.10 Reflow | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.4.10 | |
| 96 | 11.1.4.11 Non-text contrast | ✓ |  |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.4.11 | |
| 97 | 11.1.4.12 Text spacing | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.4.12 | |
| 98 | 11.1.4.13 Content on hover or focus | ✓ | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.1.4.13 | |
| 99 | 11.2.1.1.1 Keyboard (open functionality) |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.2.1.1.1 | |
| 100 | 11.2.1.1.2 Keyboard (closed functionality) |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.2.1.1.2 | |
| 101 | 11.2.1.2 No keyboard trap |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.2.1.2 | |
| 102 | 11.2.1.4.1 Character key shortcuts (open functionality) |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.2.1.4.1 | |
| 103 | 11.2.1.4.2 Character key shortcuts (closed functionality) |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.2.1.4.2 | |
| 104 | 11.2.2.1 Timing adjustable |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.2.2.1 | |
| 105 | 11.2.2.2 Pause, stop, hide |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.2.2.2 | |
| 106 | 11.2.3.1 Three flashes or below threshold |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.2.3.1 | |
| 107 | 11.2.4.3 Focus order |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.2.4.3 | |
| 108 | 11.2.4.4 Link purpose (in context) |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.2.4.4 | |
| 109 | 11.2.4.6 Headings and labels |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.2.4.6 | |
| 110 | 11.2.4.7 Focus visible |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.2.4.7 | |
| 111 | 11.2.5.1 Pointer gestures |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.2.5.1 | |
| 112 | 11.2.5.2 Pointer cancellation |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.2.5.2 | |
| 113 | 11.2.5.3.1 Label in name (open functionality) |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.2.5.3.1 | |
| 114 | 11.2.5.4 Motion actuation |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.2.5.4 | |
| 115 | 11.3.1.1.1 Language of software (open functionality) |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.3.1.1.1 | |
| 116 | 11.3.1.1.2 Language of software (closed functionality) |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.3.1.1.2 | |
| 117 | 11.3.2.1 On focus |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.3.2.1 | |
| 118 | 11.3.2.2 On input |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.3.2.2 | |
| 119 | 11.3.3.1.1 Error identification (open functionality) |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.3.3.1.1 | |
| 120 | 11.3.3.1.2 Error Identification (closed functionality) |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.3.3.1.2 | |
| 121 | 11.3.3.2 Labels or instructions |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.3.3.2 | |
| 122 | 11.3.3.3 Error suggestion |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.3.3.3 | |
| 123 | 11.3.3.4 Error prevention (legal, financial, data) |  |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.3.3.4 | |
| 124 | 11.4.1.1.1 Parsing (open functionality) |  |  |  | ✓ | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.4.1.1.1 | |
| 125 | 11.4.1.2.1 Name, role, value (open functionality) |  |  |  | ✓ | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.4.1.2.1 | |
| 126 | 11.4.1.3.1 Status messages (open functionality) |  |  |  | ✓ | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.4.1.3.1 | |
| 127 | 11.5.2.3 Use of accessibility services | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.5.2.3 | |
| 128 | 11.5.2.5 Object information | ✓ |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.5.2.5 | |
| 129 | 11.5.2.6 Row, column, and headers | ✓ |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.5.2.6 | |
| 130 | 11.5.2.7 Values | ✓ |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.5.2.7 | |
| 131 | 11.5.2.8 Label relationships | ✓ |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.5.2.8 | |
| 132 | 11.5.2.9 Parent-child relationships | ✓ |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.5.2.9 | |
| 133 | 11.5.2.10 Text | ✓ |  | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.5.2.10 | |
| 134 | 11.5.2.11 List of available actions |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.5.2.11 | |
| 135 | 11.5.2.12 Execution of available actions |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.5.2.12 | |
| 136 | 11.5.2.13 Tracking of focus and selection attributes |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.5.2.13 | |
| 137 | 11.5.2.14 Modification of focus and selection attributes |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.5.2.14 | |
| 138 | 11.5.2.15 Change notification |  | ✓ | ✓ |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.5.2.15 | |
| 139 | 11.5.2.16 Modifications of states and properties |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.5.2.16 | |
| 140 | 11.5.2.17 Modifications of values and text |  | ✓ |  |  | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.5.2.17 | |
| 141 | 11.6.2 No disruption of accessibility features | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.6.2 | |
| 142 | 11.7 User preferences | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface | C.11.7 | |
| 143 | 11.8.1 Content technology | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where ICT is an authoring tool | C.11.8.1 | |
| 144 | 11.8.2 Accessible content creation | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where ICT is an authoring tool | C.11.8.2 | |
| 145 | 11.8.3 Preservation of accessibility information in transformations | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where ICT is an authoring tool | C.11.8.3 | |
| 146 | 11.8.4 Repair assistance | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where ICT is an authoring tool | C.11.8.4 | |
| 147 | 11.8.5 Templates | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | C | Where ICT is an authoring tool | C.11.8.5 | |
| 148 | 12.1.1 Accessibility and compatibility features | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | U |  | C.12.1.1 | |
| 149 | 12.1.2 Accessible documentation | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | U |  | C.12.1.2 | |
| 150 | 12.2.2 Information on accessibility and compatibility features | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | U |  | C.12.2.2 | |
| 151 | 12.2.3 Effective communication | ✓ |  | ✓ |  | U |  | C.12.2.3 | |
| 152 | 12.2.4 Accessible documentation | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | U |  | C.12.2.4 | |

NOTE: Because the Web Accessibility Directive (EU) 2016/2102 “does not apply to live time-based media”, the following requirements are not listed in the table above. They are, however, important requirements for making live streaming media accessible.

* + - * 9.1.2.4 Captions (live): Where ICT is a web page, it shall satisfy WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.4 Captions (Live).
      * 10.1.2.4 Captions (live): Where ICT is a non-web document, it shall satisfy the WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.4 Captions (Live).
      * 11.1.2.4 Captions (live): Where ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface, it shall satisfy the WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.4 Captions (Live).

# Annex B (informative): Relationship between requirements and functional performance statements

## B.1 Relationships between clauses 5 to 13 and the functional performance statements

Table B.2 shows which of the requirements set out in clauses 5 to 13 support each of the functional performance statements set out in clause 4.2.

To allow Table B.2 to fit the page, the abbreviations shown in Table B.1 have been used in the column headers of Table B.2.

Table B.1: Key to the column header designations used in Table B.2

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Clause number | Column header abbreviation | Functional performance statement |
| 4.2.1 | WV | Usage without vision |
| 4.2.2 | LV | Usage with limited vision |
| 4.2.3 | WPC | Usage without perception of colour |
| 4.2.4 | WH | Usage without hearing |
| 4.2.5 | LH | Usage with limited hearing |
| 4.2.6 | WVC | Usage without vocal capability |
| 4.2.7 | LMS | Usage with limited manipulation or strength |
| 4.2.8 | LR | Usage with limited reach |
| 4.2.9 | PST | Minimize photosensitive seizure triggers |
| 4.2.10 | LC | Usage with limited cognition |
| 4.2.11 | P | Privacy |

The following abbreviations have been used to represent the relationship between the requirements in clauses 5 to 13 and the functional performance statements:

* P = Primary relationship. The requirement supports the functional performance statement.
* S = Secondary relationship. The requirement provides partial support for the functional performance statement because some users may use the feature in specific situations.

Table B.2: Requirements in clauses 5 to 13 supporting the accessibility needs  
expressed in the functional performance statements

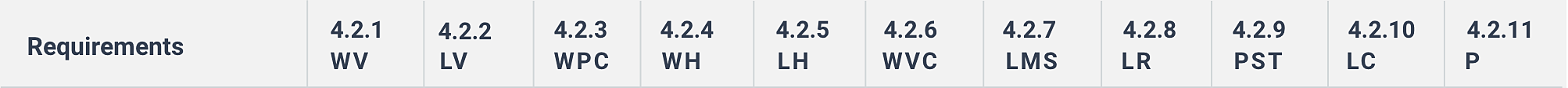
| **Requirements** | **4.2.1 WV** | **4.2.2 LV** | **4.2.3 WPC** | **4.2.4 WH** | **4.2.5 LH** | **4.2.6 WVC** | **4.2.7 LMS** | **4.2.8 LR** | **4.2.9 PST** | **4.2.10 LC** | **4.2.11 P** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 5.1.2.1 Closed functionality | P | P | P | P | P | P | P | P | P | P | P |
| 5.1.2.2 Assistive technology | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S |
| 5.1.3.1 General (belongs to 5.1.3 Non-visual access) | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 5.1.3.2 Auditory output delivery including speech | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 5.1.3.3 Auditory output correlation | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 5.1.3.4 Speech output user control | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 5.1.3.5 Speech output automatic interruption | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 5.1.3.6 Speech output for non-text content | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 5.1.3.7 Speech output for video information | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 5.1.3.8 Masked entry | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | P |
| 5.1.3.9 Private access to personal data | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | P |
| 5.1.3.10 Non-interfering audio output | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 5.1.3.11 Private listening volume | P | S | - | - | S | - | - | - | - | S | S |
| 5.1.3.12 Speaker volume | P | S | - | - | S | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 5.1.3.13 Volume reset | P | S | - | - | S | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 5.1.3.14 Spoken languages | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 5.1.3.15 Non-visual error identification | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 5.1.3.16 Receipts, tickets, and transactional outputs | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 5.1.4 Functionality closed to text enlargement | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 5.1.5 Visual output for auditory information | - | - | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 5.1.6.1 Operation without keyboard interface (closed functionality) | P | P | - | - | - | S | P | - | - | - | - |
| 5.1.6.2 Operation without keyboard interface (Input focus) | P | P | - | - | - | S | P | - | - | - | - |
| 5.1.7 Access without speech | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - | - | - |
| 5.2 Activation of accessibility features | P | P | P | P | P | - | P | - | - | - | - |
| 5.3 Biometrics | P | P | - | P | - | P | P | P | - | - | P |
| 5.4 Preservation of accessibility information during conversion | P | P | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 5.5.1 Means of operation | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - | - |
| 5.5.2 Operable part discernibility | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 5.6.1 Tactile or auditory status | P | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 5.6.2 Visual status | - | - | - | P | P | - | P | P | - | S | - |
| 5.7 Key repeat | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | S | - |
| 5.8 Double-strike key acceptance | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | S | - |
| 5.9 Simultaneous user actions | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | S | - |
| 6.1 Audio bandwidth for speech (informative recommendation) | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 6.2.1.1 RTT communication | - | - | - | P | S | S | - | - | - | - | - |
| 6.2.1.2 Concurrent voice and text | - | - | - | P | P | S | - | - | - | - | - |
| 6.2.2.1 Visually distinguishable display | - | - | - | P | S | S | - | - | - | - | - |
| 6.2.2.2 Programmatically determinable send and receive direction | - | - | - | P | S | S | - | - | - | - | - |
| 6.2.2.3 Speaker identification | - | - | - | P | P | S | - | - | - | - | - |
| 6.2.2.4 Visual indicator of Audio with RTT | - | - | - | P | P | S | - | - | - | - | - |
| 6.2.3 Interoperability | - | - | - | P | S | S | - | - | - | - | - |
| 6.2.4 RTT responsiveness | - | - | - | P | S | S | - | - | - | - | - |
| 6.3 Caller ID | P | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 6.4 Alternatives to voice-based services | - | - | - | P | P | P | - | - | - | - | - |
| 6.5.2 Resolution | - | - | - | P | P | S | - | - | - | - | - |
| 6.5.3 Frame rate | - | - | - | P | P | S | - | - | - | - | - |
| 6.5.4 Synchronization between audio and video | - | - | - | P | P | S | - | - | - | - | - |
| 6.5.5 Visual indicator of audio with video | - | - | - | P | P | S | - | - | - | - | - |
| 6.5.6 Speaker identification with video (sign language) communication | - | - | - | P | P | S | - | - | - | - | - |
| 6.6 Alternatives to video-based services | P | S | - | P | P | P | - | - | - | - | - |
| 7.1.1 Captioning playback | - | - | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 7.1.2 Captioning synchronization | - | - | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 7.1.3 Preservation of captioning | - | - | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 7.1.4 Captions characteristics and personalisation | - | S | S | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 7.1.5 Spoken subtitles | P | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 7.2.1 Audio description playback | P | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 7.2.2 Audio description synchronization | P | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 7.2.3 Preservation of audio description | P | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 7.3 User controls for captions and audio description | P | P | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 8.1.2 Standard connections | P | P | - | - | P | - | P | P | - | P | - |
| 8.1.3 Colour | - | S | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 8.2.1.1 Speech volume range | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 8.2.1.2 Incremental volume control | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 8.2.2.1 Fixed-line devices | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 8.2.2.2 Wireless communication devices | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 8.3.0 Stationary ICT, General (informative recommendation) | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - |
| 8.3.1 Forward or side reach | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - |
| 8.3.2.1 Unobstructed high forward reach | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - |
| 8.3.2.2 Unobstructed low forward reach | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - |
| 8.3.2.3.1 Obstructed forward reach - Clear space | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - |
| 8.3.2.3.2 Obstructed (< 510 mm) forward reach | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - |
| 8.3.2.3.3 Obstructed (< 635 mm) forward reach | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - |
| 8.3.2.4 Knee and toe clearance width | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - |
| 8.3.2.5 Toe clearance | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - |
| 8.3.2.6 Knee clearance | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - |
| 8.3.3.1 Unobstructed high side reach | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - |
| 8.3.3.2 Unobstructed low side reach | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - |
| 8.3.3.3.1 Obstructed (≤ 255 mm) side reach | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - |
| 8.3.3.3.2 Obstructed (≤ 610 mm) side reach | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - |
| 8.3.4.1 Change in level | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - |
| 8.3.4.2 Clear floor or ground space | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - |
| 8.3.4.3.1 Approach - General | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - |
| 8.3.4.3.2 Forward approach | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - |
| 8.3.4.3.3 Parallel approach | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - |
| 8.3.5 Visibility | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - |
| 8.3.6 Installation instructions | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - |
| 8.4.1 Numeric keys | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 8.4.2.1 Means of operation of mechanical parts | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - | - |
| 8.4.2.2 Force of operation of mechanical parts | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | - | - |
| 8.4.3 Keys, tickets and fare cards | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 8.5 Tactile indication of speech mode | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 9.1.1.1 Non-text content | P | P | - | P | S | - | - | - | - | S | S |
| 9.1.2.1 Audio-only and video-only (pre-recorded) | P | P | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 9.1.2.2 Captions (pre-recorded) | - | - | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 9.1.2.3 Audio description or media alternative (pre-recorded) | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 9.1.2.4 Captions (live) | - | - | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 9.1.2.5 Audio description (pre-recorded) | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 9.1.3.1 Info and relationships | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 9.1.3.2 Meaningful sequence | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 9.1.3.3 Sensory characteristics | P | P | P | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 9.1.3.4 Orientation | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | S | - |
| 9.1.3.5 Identify input purpose | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 9.1.4.1 Use of colour | P | P | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 9.1.4.2 Audio control | P | - | - | - | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 9.1.4.3 Contrast (minimum) | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 9.1.4.4 Resize text | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 9.1.4.5 Images of text | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 9.1.4.10 Reflow | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 9.1.4.11 Non-text contrast | - | P | P | - |  | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 9.1.4.12 Text spacing | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - |
| 9.1.4.13 Content on hover or focus | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - |
| 9.2.1.1 Keyboard | P | P | - | - | - | S | P | - | - | - | - |
| 9.2.1.2 No keyboard trap | P | P | - | - | - | S | P | - | - | - | - |
| 9.2.1.4 Character key shortcuts | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | S | - |
| 9.2.2.1 Timing adjustable | P | P | - | P | P | - | P | - | - | P | - |
| 9.2.2.2 Pause, stop, hide | P | P | - | P | P | - | P | - | - | P | - |
| 9.2.3.1 Three flashes or below threshold | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - |
| 9.2.4.1 Bypass blocks | P | P | - | - | - | S | P | - | - | P | - |
| 9.2.4.2 Page titled | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | P | - |
| 9.2.4.3 Focus order | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | P | - |
| 9.2.4.4 Link purpose (in context) | P | P | - | - | - | S | P | - | - | P | - |
| 9.2.4.5 Multiple ways | P | P | - | - | - | S | P | - | - | P | - |
| 9.2.4.6 Headings and labels | P | P | - | S | - | S | P | - | - | P | - |
| 9.2.4.7 Focus visible | P | P | - | - | - | S | P | - | - | P | - |
| 9.2.5.1 Pointer gestures | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | P | - |
| 9.2.5.2 Pointer cancellation | - | P | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | P | - |
| 9.2.5.3 Label in name | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | S | - |
| 9.2.5.4 Motion actuation | S | S | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | S | - |
| 9.3.1.1 Language of page | P | S | - | S | S | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 9.3.1.2 Language of parts | P | S | - | S | S | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 9.3.2.1 On focus | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | P | - |
| 9.3.2.2 On Input | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | P | - |
| 9.3.2.3 Consistent navigation | P | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - |
| 9.3.2.4 Consistent identification | S | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - |
| 9.3.3.1 Error identification | P | P | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - |
| 9.3.3.2 Labels or instructions | P | P | - | - | - | S | S | - | - | P | - |
| 9.3.3.3 Error suggestion | P | P | - | - | - | S | S | - | - | P | - |
| 9.3.3.4 Error prevention (legal, financial, data) | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - | - | P | - |
| 9.4.1.1 Parsing | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 9.4.1.2 Name, role, value | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - | - | - | - |
| 9.4.1.3 Status messages | P | P | P | P | P | S | P | P | P | P | - |
| 9.5 WCAG Conformance requirements | P | P | P | P | P | S | P | P | P | P | S |
| 10.1.1.1 Non-text content | P | P | - | P | S | - | - | - | - | S | S |
| 10.1.2.1 Audio-only and video-only (pre-recorded) | P | P | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 10.1.2.2 Captions (pre-recorded) | - | - | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 10.1.2.3 Audio description or media alternative (pre-recorded) | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 10.1.2.4 Captions (live) | - | - | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 10.1.2.5 Audio description (pre-recorded) | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 10.1.3.1 Info and relationships | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 10.1.3.2 Meaningful sequence | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 10.1.3.3 Sensory characteristics | P | P | P | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 10.1.3.4 Orientation | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | S | - |
| 10.1.3.5 Identify input purpose | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 10.1.4.1 Use of colour | P | P | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 10.1.4.2 Audio control | P | - | - | - | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 10.1.4.3 Contrast (minimum) | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 10.1.4.4 Resize text | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 10.1.4.5 Images of text | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 10.1.4.10 Reflow | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 10.1.4.11 Non-text contrast | - | P | P | - |  | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 10.1.4.12 Text spacing | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - |
| 10.1.4.13 Content on hover or focus | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - |
| 10.2.1.1 Keyboard | P | P | - | - | - | S | P | - | - | - | - |
| 10.2.1.2 No keyboard trap | P | P | - | - | - | S | P | - | - | - | - |
| 10.2.1.4 Character key shortcuts | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | S | - |
| 10.2.2.1 Timing adjustable | P | P | - | P | P | - | P | - | - | P | - |
| 10.2.2.2 Pause, stop, hide | P | P | - | P | P | - | P | - | - | P | - |
| 10.2.3.1 Three flashes or below threshold | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - |
| 10.2.4.2 Document titled | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | P | - |
| 10.2.4.3 Focus order | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | P | - |
| 10.2.4.4 Link purpose (in context) | P | P | - | - | - | S | P | - | - | P | - |
| 10.2.4.6 Headings and labels | P | P | - | S | - | S | P | - | - | P | - |
| 10.2.4.7 Focus visible | P | P | - | - | - | S | P | - | - | P | - |
| 10.2.5.1 Pointer gestures | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | P | - |
| 10.2.5.2 Pointer cancellation | - | P | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | P | - |
| 10.2.5.3 Label in name | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | S | - |
| 10.2.5.4 Motion actuation | S | S | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | S | - |
| 10.3.1.1 Language of page | P | S | - | S | S | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 10.3.1.2 Language of parts | P | S | - | S | S | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 10.3.2.1 On focus | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | P | - |
| 10.3.2.2 On input | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | P | - |
| 10.3.3.1 Error identification | P | P | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - |
| 10.3.3.2 Labels or instructions | P | P | - | - | - | S | S | - | - | P | - |
| 10.3.3.3 Error suggestion | P | P | - | - | - | S | S | - | - | P | - |
| 10.3.3.4 Error prevention (legal, financial, data) | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - | - | P | - |
| 10.4.1.1 Parsing | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 10.4.1.2 Name, role, value | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - | - | - | - |
| 10.4.1.3 Status messages | P | P | P | P | P | P | P | P | P | P | - |
| 10.5 Caption positioning | - | - | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 10.6 Audio description timing | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.1.1.1.1 Non-text content (open functionality) | P | P | - | P | S | - | - | - | - | S | S |
| 11.1.1.1.2 Non-text content (closed functionality | P | P | - | P | S | - | - | - | - | S | S |
| 11.1.2.1.1 Audio-only and video-only (pre-recorded - open functionality) | P | P | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.1.2.1.2.1 Pre-recorded audio-only (closed functionality) | - | - | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.1.2.1.2.2 Pre-recorded video-only (closed functionality) | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.1.2.2 Captions (pre-recorded) | - | - | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.1.2.3.1 Audio description or media alternative (pre-recorded - open functionality) | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.1.2.3.2 Audio description or media alternative (pre-recorded - closed functionality) | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.1.2.4 Captions (live) | - | - | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.1.2.5 Audio description (pre-recorded) | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.1.3.1.1 Info and relationships (open functionality) | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.1.3.1.2 Info and relationships (closed functionality) | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.1.3.2.1 Meaningful sequence (open functionality) | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.1.3.2.2 Meaningful sequence (closed functionality) | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.1.3.3 Sensory characteristics | P | P | P | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.1.3.4 Orientation | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | S | - |
| 11.1.3.5.1 Identify input purpose (open functionality) | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 11.1.3.5.2 Identify input purpose (closed functionality) | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 11.1.4.1 Use of colour | P | P | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.1.4.2 Audio control | P | - | - | - | P | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.1.4.3 Contrast (minimum) | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.1.4.4.1 Resize text (open functionality) | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 11.1.4.4.2 Resize text (closed functionality) | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 11.1.4.5.1 Images of text (open functionality) | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.1.4.5.2 Images of text (closed functionality) | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 11.1.4.10 Reflow | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 11.1.4.11 Non-text contrast | - | P | P | - |  | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.1.4.12 Text spacing | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - |
| 11.1.4.13 Content on hover or focus | - | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - |
| 11.2.1.1.1 Keyboard (open functionality) | P | P | - | - | - | S | P | - | - | - | - |
| 11.2.1.1.2 Keyboard (closed functionality) | P | P | - | - | - | S | P | - | - | - | - |
| 11.2.1.2 No keyboard trap | P | P | - | - | - | S | P | - | - | - | - |
| 11.2.1.4.1 Character key shortcuts (open functionality) | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | S | - |
| 11.2.1.4.2 Character key shortcuts (closed functionality) | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | S | - |
| 11.2.2.1 Timing adjustable | P | P | - | P | P | - | P | - | - | P | - |
| 11.2.2.2 Pause, stop, hide | P | P | - | P | P | - | P | - | - | P | - |
| 11.2.3.1 Three flashes or below threshold | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - | - |
| 11.2.4.3 Focus order | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | P | - |
| 11.2.4.4 Link purpose (in context) | P | P | - | - | - | S | P | - | - | P | - |
| 11.2.4.6 Headings and labels | P | P | - | S | - | S | P | - | - | P | - |
| 11.2.4.7 Focus visible | P | P | - | - | - | S | P | - | - | P | - |
| 11.2.5.1 Pointer gestures | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | P | - |
| 11.2.5.2 Pointer cancellation | - | P | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | P | - |
| 11.2.5.3.1 Label in name (open functionality) | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | S | - |
| 11.2.5.3.2 Label in name (closed functionality) | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | S | - |
| 11.2.5.4 Motion actuation | S | S | - | - | - | - | P | P | - | S | - |
| 11.3.1.1.1 Language of software (open functionality) | P | S | - | S | S | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.3.1.1.2 Language of software (closed functionality) | P | S | - | S | S | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.3.2.1 On focus | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | P | - |
| 11.3.2.2 On input | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | P | - |
| 11.3.3.1.1 Error identification (open functionality) | P | P | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - |
| 11.3.3.1.2 Error Identification (closed functionality) | P | P | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - |
| 11.3.3.2 Labels or instructions | P | P | - | - | - | S | S | - | - | P | - |
| 11.3.3.3 Error suggestion | P | P | - | - | - | S | S | - | - | P | - |
| 11.3.3.4 Error prevention (legal, financial, data) | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - | - | P | - |
| 11.4.1.1.1 Parsing (open functionality) | P | S | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 11.4.1.1.2 Parsing (closed functionality) | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 11.4.1.2.1 Name, role, value (open functionality) | P | P | - | - | - | - | S | - | - | - | - |
| 11.4.1.2.2 Name, role, value (closed functionality) | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 11.4.1.3.1 Status messages (open functionality) | P | P | P | P | P | P | P | P | P | P | - |
| 11.5.1 Closed functionality | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 11.5.2.1 Platform accessibility service support for software that provides a user interface | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | S | - |
| 11.5.2.2 Platform accessibility service support for assistive technologies | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | S | - |
| 11.5.2.3 Use of accessibility services | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | S | - |
| 11.5.2.4 Assistive technology | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | S | - |
| 11.5.2.5 Object information | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | S | - |
| 11.5.2.6 Row, column, and headers | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | S | - |
| 11.5.2.7 Values | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | S | - |
| 11.5.2.8 Label relationships | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | S | - |
| 11.5.2.9 Parent-child relationships | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | S | - |
| 11.5.2.10 Text | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | S | - |
| 11.5.2.11 List of available actions | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | S | - |
| 11.5.2.12 Execution of available actions | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | S | - |
| 11.5.2.13 Tracking of focus and selection attributes | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | S | - |
| 11.5.2.14 Modification of focus and selection attributes | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | S | - |
| 11.5.2.15 Change notification | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | S | - |
| 11.5.2.16 Modifications of states and properties | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | S | - |
| 11.5.2.17 Modifications of values and text | P | P | - | - | - | - | P | - | - | S | - |
| 11.6.1 User control of accessibility features | P | P | P | P | P | - | P | - | - | - | - |
| 11.6.2 No disruption of accessibility features | P | P | P | P | P | - | P | - | - | - | - |
| 11.7 User preferences | - | P | P | - | - | - | - | - | - | S | - |
| 11.8.1 Content technology | P | P | P | P | P | S | P | P | P | P | S |
| 11.8.2 Accessible content creation | P | P | P | P | P | S | P | P | P | P | S |
| 11.8.3 Preservation of accessibility information in transformations | P | P | P | P | P | S | P | P | P | P | S |
| 11.8.4 Repair assistance | P | P | P | P | P | S | P | P | P | P | S |
| 11.8.5 Templates | P | P | P | P | P | S | P | P | P | P | S |
| 12.1.1 Accessibility and compatibility features | P | P | P | P | P | - | P | - | - | S | - |
| 12.1.2 Accessible documentation | P | P | P | P | P | S | P | P | P | P | S |
| 12.2.2 Information on accessibility and compatibility features | P | P | P | P | P | - | P | - | - | S | - |
| 12.2.3 Effective communication | - | - | - | P | P | P | - | - | - | S | - |
| 12.2.4 Accessible documentation | P | P | P | P | P | S | P | P | P | P | S |
| 13.1.2 Text relay services | - | - | - | P | P | P | - | - | - | S | - |
| 13.1.3 Sign relay services | - | - | - | P | P | P | - | - | - | - | - |
| 13.1.4 Lip-reading relay services | - | - | - | P | P | P | - | - | - | - | - |
| 13.1.5 Captioned telephony services | - | - | - | P | P | P | - | - | - | - | - |
| 13.1.6 Speech to speech relay services | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | P | - |
| 13.2 Access to relay services | - | - | - | P | P | P | - | - | - | S | - |
| 13.3 Access to emergency services | - | - | - | P | P | P | - | - | - | S | - |

## B.2 Interpretation of Table B.2

### B.2.0 General

Table B.2. illustrates the impact a specific accessibility issue might have on different users. It does this by mapping the requirements in the standard with the user needs in clause 4. A requirement can be Primary (P) or Secondary (S).

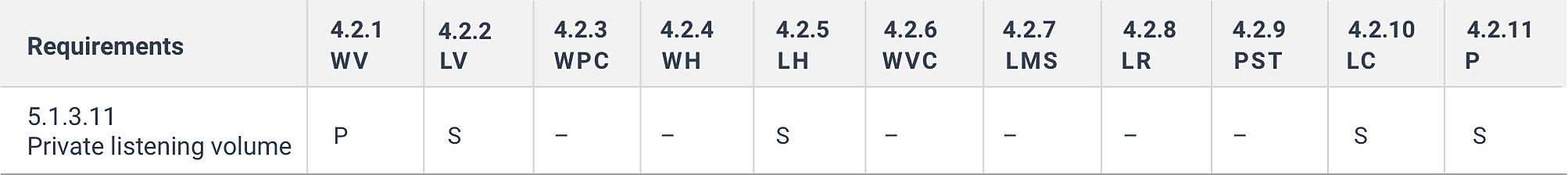
The technical requirements are listed in a vertical column and the user needs horizontally.



The table indicates which user needs are covered by each requirement.

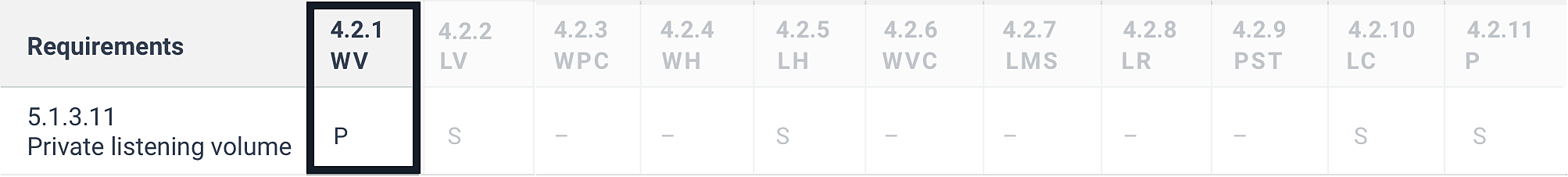
### B.2.1 Example

#### B.2.1.1 Step 1

For requirement 5.1.3.11, which relates to the possibility of changing the volume when the user is listening in a private headset, the table can be read like this: 

The requirement for private listening volume has a “P” for primary support in the column “WV”, which stands for “without vision”.

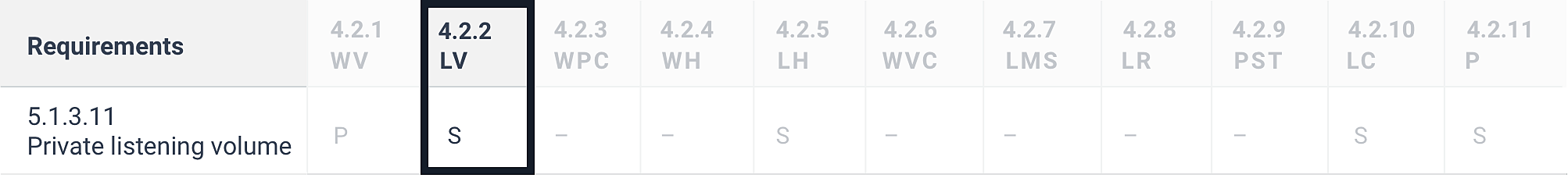




This means that private listening volume supports the user needs for users who can not see. In other words, the possibility for the user to control the volume when listening via a private headset is important for blind users.

#### B.2.1.2 Step 2

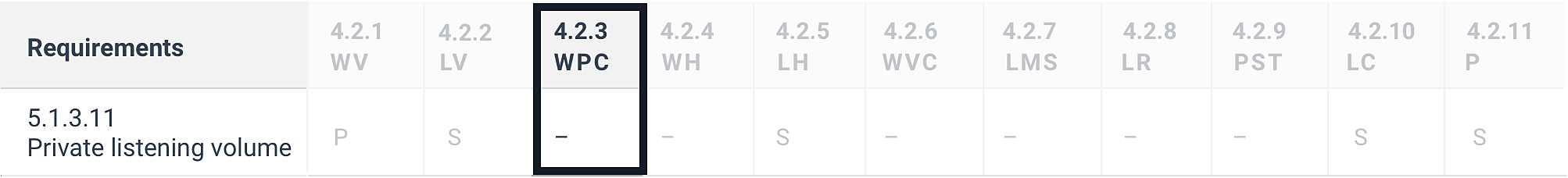
The third column shows that, for users with low vision, the possibility to control the volume when listening via a private headset is not as important as for blind users, it has an S for Secondary, where the first column had a P for Primary.



Secondary support means that some users in this group may use the accessibility feature in specific situations.

#### B.2.1.3 Step 3

In this way it is possible to assess the impact on user needs if a particular requirement is not met.

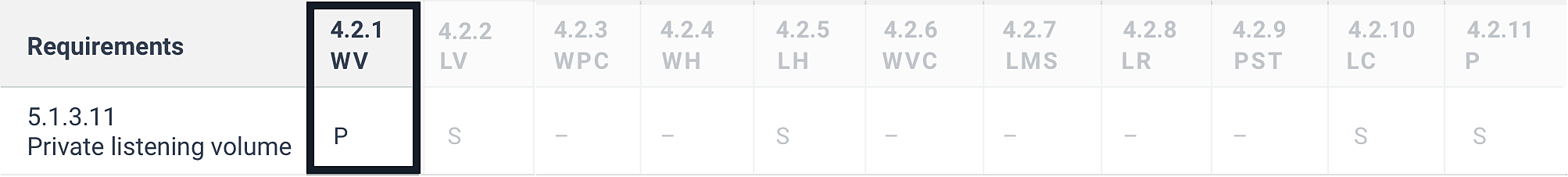


The fourth column considers users who are color blind; the requirement on private listening volume is not marked at all. Of course, the possibility of changing the volume when listening in private headset is nice to have for all users, no matter their ability to distinguish between colors, but the listening volume does not compensate for the color blindness.

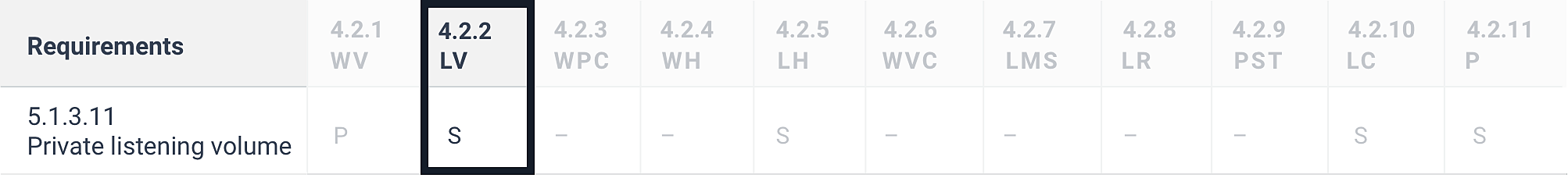
#### B.2.1.4 Step 4

The table can also be read the other way around:

Since blind users can not see the screen, they need an alternative way to use the interface. If this alternative is audio via private headset, blind users need the possibility to change the volume.



Some users who can see, but not well, need or prefer to use audio as an alternative way to use the interface. If this alternative is audio via private headset, some low vision users will benefit from the possibility to change the volume.



# Annex C (normative): Determination of conformance

## C.1 Introduction

This normative annex sets out the means necessary to determine conformance with the individual requirements set out in the body of the present document.

To assist the reader, empty clauses are inserted in order to make the numbering of the annex reflect the clause numbers in the requirements.

## C.2 Empty clause

This clause is intentionally left empty.

## C.3 Empty clause

This clause is intentionally left empty.

## C.4 Functional performance

Clause 4 is informative and does not contain requirements that require testing.

## C.5 Generic requirements

### C.5.1 Closed functionality

#### C.5.1.1 Introduction

Clause 5.1.1 is informative and does not contain requirements that require testing.

#### C.5.1.2 General

##### C.5.1.2.1 Closed functionality

ICT with closed functionality shall meet the requirements set out in clauses C.5.2 to C.13, as applicable.

##### C.5.1.2.2 Assistive technology

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT has closed functionality. |
| Procedure | 1. Determine the closed functions of the ICT.  2. Check that the tests C.5.1.3 to C.5.1.6 can be carried out without the attachment or installation of any assistive technology except personal headsets or inductive loops. |
| Result | Pass: Check 2 is true  Fail: Check 2 is false |

#### C.5.1.3 Non-visual access

##### C.5.1.3.1 Audio output of visual information

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. Visual information is needed to enable the use of those functions of the ICT that are closed to assistive technology for screen reading. |
| Procedure | 1. Determine the functions of the ICT closed to screen reading.  2. Check that they are all operable using audio ouput access. |
| Result | Pass: Check 2 is true  Fail: Check 2 is false |

##### C.5.1.3.2 Auditory output delivery including speech

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. Auditory output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the auditory output is delivered by a mechanism included in or provided with the ICT.  2. Check that the auditory output is delivered by a personal headset that can be connected through a 3,5 mm audio jack or an industry standard connection without requiring the use of vision. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 or 2 is true  Fail: Checks 1 and 2 are false |

##### C.5.1.3.3 Auditory output correlation

Clause 5.1.3.3 is informative only and contains no requirements requiring test.

##### C.5.1.3.4 Speech output user control

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. Speech output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the speech output is capable of being interrupted when requested by the user.  2. Check that the speech output is capable of being repeated when requested by the user. |
| Result | Pass: All checks are true  Fail: Any check is false |

##### C.5.1.3.5 Speech output automatic interruption

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. Speech output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality. |
| Procedure | 1. Determine the closed functions of the ICT.  2. Check that the speech output for each single function is interrupted on a user action.  3. Check that the speech output for each single function is interrupted when new speech output begins. |
| Result | Pass: Check 2 and 3 are true  Fail: Check 2 or 3 are false |

##### C.5.1.3.6 Speech output for non-text content

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. Non-text content is presented to users via speech output. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that speech output is provided as an alternative for non-text content.  2. Check that the non-text content is not pure decoration.  3. Check that the non-text content is not used only for visual formatting.  4. Check that the speech output follows the guidance for "text alternative" described in WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.1.1. |
| Result | Pass: Checks 1 and 2 and 3 and 4 are true; or 1 and 2 are false; or 1 and 3 are false  Fail: Checks 1 is true and 2 false; or 1 is true and 3 false; or 1 and 2 and 3 are true and 4 is false |

##### C.5.1.3.7 Speech output for video information

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. Pre-recorded video content is needed to enable the use of closed functions of ICT  2. Speech output is provided as non-visual access to non-text content displayed on closed functionality. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the speech output presents equivalent information for the pre-recorded video content. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.5.1.3.8 Masked entry

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. Auditory output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality.  2. The characters displayed are masking characters.  3. The user does not explicitly choose to allow non-private auditory output. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the auditory output is not a spoken version of the characters entered.  2. Check that the auditory output is known to be delivered only to a mechanism for private listening.  3. If 1 and 2 are false, check that the user has explicitly chosen to allow non-private auditory output. |
| Result | Pass: Any check is true  Fail: All checks are false |

##### C.5.1.3.9 Private access to personal data

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. Auditory output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality.  2. The output contains data.  3. There is an applicable privacy policy which considers that data to be private. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the auditory output is only delivered through a mechanism for private listening.  2. Check that the mechanism for private listening can be connected without requiring the use of vision.  3. Check that the auditory output is delivered through any other mechanism that can be chosen by the user. |
| Result | Pass: Checks 1 and 2 or 3 are true  Fail: Checks 1 or 2 and 3 are false |

##### C.5.1.3.10 Non-interfering audio output

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. Auditory output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality.  2. The ICT automatically plays interfering audible output. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the interfering audible output lasts no longer than three seconds. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.5.1.3.11 Private listening volume

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The auditory output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality.  2. The auditory output is delivered through a mechanism for private listening. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that there is at least one non-visual mode of operation for controlling the volume. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.5.1.3.12 Speaker volume

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The auditory output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality.  2. The auditory output is delivered through speakers. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that a non-visual incremental volume control is provided.  2. Check that output amplification up to a level of at least 65 dBA (-29 dBPaA) is available. |
| Result | Pass: Checks 1 and 2 are true  Fail: Check 1 or 2 is false |

##### C.5.1.3.13 Volume reset

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The auditory output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality.  2. The ICT is not dedicated to a single user. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that a function that automatically resets the volume to be at a level of 65 dBA or less after every use is provided. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.5.1.3.14 Spoken languages

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The speech output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality.  2. The speech output is not proper names, technical terms, words of indeterminate language, and words or phrases that have become part of the vernacular of the immediately surrounding text.  3. The content is not generated externally and is under the control of the ICT vendor.  4. The displayed languages can be selected using non-visual access.  5. The user has not selected a speech language that is different from the language of the displayed content. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the speech output is in the same human language of the displayed content provided. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.5.1.3.15 Non-visual error identification

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. Speech output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality.  2. An input error is automatically detected. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that speech output identifies the item that is in error.  2. Check that the speech output describes the item that is in error. |
| Result | Pass: Checks 1 and 2 are true  Fail: Check 1 or check 2 false |

##### C.5.1.3.16 Receipts, tickets and transactional outputs

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is closed to visual access.  2. The ICT provides receipts, tickets, or other outputs as a result of a self-service transaction.  3. The information being checked is not printed copies of itineraries and maps. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that speech output is provided which includes all information necessary to complete or verify the transaction. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.5.1.4 Functionality closed to text enlargement

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. A functionality of the ICT is closed to enlargement features of platform or assistive technology.  2. A viewing distance is specified by the supplier. |
| Procedure | 1. Measure the height of a capital letter H.  2. Check that it subtends an angle of at least 0,7 degrees at the specified viewing distance. |
| Result | Pass: Check 2 is true  Fail: Check 2 is false |

#### C.5.1.5 Visual output for auditory information

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. Pre-recorded auditory information is needed to enable the use of closed functions of ICT. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the visual information is equivalent to the pre-recorded auditory output. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.5.1.6 Operation without keyboard interface

##### C.5.1.6.1 Closed functionality

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. ICT functionality is closed to keyboards or keyboard interfaces. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that all functionality is operable without vision. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.5.1.6.2 Input focus

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. ICT functionality is closed to keyboards or keyboard interfaces.  2. Input focus can be moved to a user interface element. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that it is possible to move the input focus away from that element using the same mechanism. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.5.1.7 Access without speech

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. Speech is needed to enable the use of closed functions of ICT. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the closed functions can be enabled by an alternative input mechanism that does not require speech. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.5.2 Activation of accessibility features

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT has documented accessibility features to meet a specific need. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that it is possible to activate those accessibility features without relying on a method that does not support that need. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.5.3 Biometrics

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Test 1 |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT uses biological characteristic for user identification. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that more than one means can be used for user identification. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |
| Type of assessment | Test 2 |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT uses biological characteristic for control of ICT. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that more than one means can be used for control of ICT. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.5.4 Preservation of accessibility information during conversion

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The non-proprietary information provided for accessibility is documented.  2. The ICT converts information or communication.  3. The non-proprietary information provided for accessibility can be contained in the destination format.  4. The non-proprietary information provided for accessibility can be supported by the destination format. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the non-proprietary information provided for accessibility is preserved when the ICT converts information or communication. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.5.5 Operable parts

#### C.5.5.1 Means of operation

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | The ICT has operable parts that require grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist to operate. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that there is an accessible alternative means of operation that does not require these actions. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.5.5.2 Operable part discernibility

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | The ICT has operable parts. |
| Procedure | 1. Identify that there is a means to discern each operable part without vision.  2. Check that the action associated with the operable part has not been performed when using the means to discern each operable part of step 1. |
| Result | Pass: Checks 1 and 2 are true  Fail: Checks 1 or 2 are false |

### C.5.6 Locking or toggle controls

#### C.5.6.1 Tactile or auditory status

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT has a locking or toggle control.  2. The locking or toggle control is visually presented to the user. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that there is at least one mode of operation where the status of all locking or toggle controls can be determined through touch without operating the control. 2. Check that there is at least one mode of operation where the status of all locking or toggle controls can be determined through sound without operating the control. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 or 2 is true  Fail: Checks 1 and 2 are false |

#### C.5.6.2 Visual status

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT has a locking or toggle control.  2. The locking or toggle control is presented to the user. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that there is at least one mode of operation where the status of all locking or toggle controls can be visually determined when the control is presented. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.5.7 Key repeat

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT has a key repeat function A keyboard or keypad with key repeat is provided.  2. The key repeat cannot be turned off. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the delay before key repeat can be adjusted to at least 2 seconds.  2. Check that the key repeat rate can be adjusted to 2 seconds per character. |
| Result | Pass: Checks 1 and 2 are true  Fail: Check 1 or 2 is false |

### C.5.8 Double-strike key acceptance

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT has a keyboard or keypad. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that there is a mechanism that allows adjustment of the delay after any keystroke, during which an additional key-press will not be accepted if it is identical to the previous keystroke.  2. Adjust that mechanism to its maximum setting.  3. Press any key.  4. After a delay of 0,5 seconds press the same key as that pressed in step 3.  5. Check whether the keystroke of step 4 has been accepted. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true and check 5 is false  Fail: Check 1 is false or check 5 is true |

### C.5.9 Simultaneous user actions

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | None. |
| Procedure | 1. If there are multiple modes of operation, select one mode of operation (see notes 1 and 2 of this table for guidance on the selection).  2. Determine all the user controllable functions of the ICT.  3. Check that each user controllable function can be operated with a single point of contact.  4. If there are multiple modes of operation and the test is not passed, repeat the procedure until all modes of operation have been tested. |
| Result | Pass: Check 3 is true  Fail: Check 3 is false for all modes of operation |
| NOTE 1: If there are multiple modes of operation, these should be tested until the conformance test is passed.  NOTE 2: Where it is claimed that a specific mode complies with clause 5.6, this mode should be tested first. | |

## C.6 ICT with two-way voice communication

### C.6.1 Audio bandwidth for speech

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT under test provides two-way voice communication. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the ICT can encode and decode audio with a frequency range with an upper limit of at least 7 000 Hz. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.6.2 Real-Time Text (RTT) functionality

#### C.6.2.1 RTT provision

##### C.6.2.1.1 RTT communication

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT under test has a mode that provides a means for two-way voice communication.  2. The ICT is in the mode that provides a means for two-way voice communication.  3. An "RTT reference terminal" is available. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the ICT allows two-way RTT communication with the "reference" ICT. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |
| NOTE: An “RTT reference terminal” is a terminal specifically designed for testing RTT capable devices in a manner that would confirm their functionality and interoperability. These are generally created by a national or international standards entity so that all testing is done with a consistent reference terminal. | |

##### C.6.2.1.2 Concurrent voice and text

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT provides a means for two-way voice communication.  2. The ICT provides a means for two-way RTT communication. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that ICT allows the concurrent use of voice and RTT through a single user connection. |
| Result | Pass: Checks 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.6.2.2 Display of RTT

##### C.6.2.2.1 Visually distinguishable display

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT under test has RTT send and receive capabilities.  2. The ICT supports RTT mechanism(s).  3. An "RTT reference terminal" is available. |
| Procedure | 1. The ICT under test is connected to the "reference" terminal.  2. The different elements of the ICT are in an operational status (the connection is active and the terminals are in the relevant RTT mode) and the two terminals are communicating with each other.  3. A Short text sequence is sent by the ICT under test.  4. A Short text sequence is sent by the "reference" terminal.  5. Check, on the ICT under test, that displayed sent text is visually differentiated from and separated from received text. |
| Result | Pass: Check 5 is true  Fail: Check 5 is false |
| NOTE: An “RTT reference terminal” is a terminal specifically designed for testing RTT capable devices in a manner that would confirm their functionality and interoperability. These are generally created by a national or international standards entity so that all testing is done with a consistent reference terminal. | |

##### C.6.2.2.2 Programmatically determinable send and receive direction

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT has RTT send and receive capabilities.  2. The RTT is open functionality.  3. An "RTT reference terminal" is available. |
| Procedure | 1. The ICT under test is connected to the "reference" terminal.  2. The different elements of the ICT are in an operational status (the connection is active and the terminals are in the relevant RTT mode) and the two terminals are communicating with each other.  3. A Short text sequence is sent by the ICT under test.  4. A Short text sequence is sent by the "reference" terminal.  5. Check that the send/receive direction of text sequences are programmatically determinable. |
| Result | Pass: Check 5 is true  Fail: Check 5 is false |
| NOTE: An “RTT reference terminal” is a terminal specifically designed for testing RTT capable devices in a manner that would confirm their functionality and interoperability. These are generally created by a national or international standards entity so that all testing is done with a consistent reference terminal. | |

##### C.6.2.2.3 Speaker Identification

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT has RTT capabilities  2. The ICT provides speaker identification for voice  3. An “RTT reference terminal” is available. |
| Procedure | 1. The ICT under test is connected to the "reference" terminal.  2. RTT is sent from the Reference Terminal  3. Check by observation whether the ICT under test provides speaker identification for RTT incoming text. |
| Result | Pass: Check 2 is true  Fail: Check 2 is false |
| NOTE: An “RTT reference terminal” is a terminal specifically designed for testing RTT capable devices in a manner that would confirm their functionality and interoperability. These are generally created by a national or international standards entity so that all testing is done with a consistent reference terminal. | |

##### C.6.2.2.4 Visual indicator of audio with RTT

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1 ICT provides two-way voice communication  2 ICT has RTT capabilities |
| Procedure | 1. ICT under test is connected to another ICT providing two-way voice communication that is compatible with the voice communication on the ICT under test.  2. A person speaks into the other ICT  3. Check by observation whether there is a real-time visual indicator of audio activity |
| Result | Pass: Check 3 is true  Fail: Check 3 is false |
| NOTE: The indicator should flicker in real time in a way that reflects the audio activity. | |

#### C.6.2.3.a Interoperability (a)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Test |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT provides a means for two-way voice communication over the Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN).  2. The ICT provides a means for two-way RTT communication.  3. A “V.18 reference terminal” is available |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the ICT interoperates over the Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN), with the V.18 reference terminal connected to the PSTN as described in Recommendation ITU-T V.18 [i.23] or any of its annexes for text telephony signals at the PSTN interface. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true Fail: Checks 1 is false |
| NOTE: A “V.18 reference terminal” is a terminal specifically designed for testing V.18 capable devices in a manner that would confirm their functionality and interoperability. These are generally created by a national or international standards entity so that all testing is done with a consistent reference terminal. | |

#### C.6.2.3.b Interoperability (b)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Test |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT provides a means for two-way voice communication using VOIP with Session Initiation Protocol (SIP).  2. The ICT provides a means for two-way RTT communication.  3. An “RTT reference terminal” is available. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the ICT interoperates with the RTT reference terminal using VOIP with Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) and using RTT that conforms to IETF RFC 4103 [i.13].  2. If the ICT interoperates with other ICT using the IP Multimedia Sub-System (IMS) to implement VOIP, check that it follows the set of protocols in ETSI TS 126 114 [i.10], ETSI TS 122 173 [i.11] and ETSI TS 134 229 [i.12] that specify how RFC 4103 applies. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true and, if the ICT interoperates with other ICT using the IP Multimedia Sub-System (IMS) to implement VOIP, check 2 is true.  Fail: Check 1 is false or, if the ICT interoperates with other ICT using the IP Multimedia Sub-System (IMS) to implement VOIP, check 2 is false. |
| NOTE: An “RTT reference terminal” is a terminal specifically designed for testing RTT capable devices in a manner that would confirm their functionality and interoperability. These are generally created by a national or international standards entity so that all testing is done with a consistent reference terminal. | |

#### C.6.2.3.c Interoperability (c)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Test |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT provides a means for two-way voice communication using technologies other than PSTN or VOIP with Session Initiation Protocol (SIP).  2. The ICT provides a means for two-way RTT communication.  3. An “RTT reference terminal” is available for that mode of RTT communication. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the ICT interoperates with the “RTT reference terminal” using a relevant and applicable common specification for RTT exchange that is published and available for the environment in which the ICT will be operating.  2. Check that the common specification in check 4 includes a method for indicating loss or corruption of characters. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 and 2 are true  Fail: Checks 1 or 2 are false |
| NOTE: An “RTT reference terminal” is a terminal specifically designed for testing RTT capable devices in a manner that would confirm their functionality and interoperability. These are generally created by a national or international standards entity so that all testing is done with a consistent reference terminal. | |

#### C.6.2.3.d Interoperability (d)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Test |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT provides a means for two-way voice communication.  2. The ICT provides a means for two-way RTT communication.  3. An “RTT reference terminal” is available using the new RTT Standard. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the ICT under test interoperates with the “RTT reference terminal” for the new RTT standard that has been introduced for use  2. Check that the new RTT standard is supported by all of the other active ICT that support voice and RTT in the same environment. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 and Check 2 are true  Fail: Checks 1 or 2 are false |

#### C.6.2.4 RTT responsiveness

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection of Measurement data or Test |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT under test utilises RTT input.  2. The ICT under test is connected to a device or software that can determine when characters are transmitted by the ICT under test. |
| Procedure | 1. Enter single characters to the terminal under test.  2. Check the time at which input entry has occurred (e.g. characters appear up on the local screen). 3. Check the period between input entry to the ICT under test and the time when the text is transmitted to the ICT network or platform. |
| Result | Pass: Check 3 is less than or equal to 500 mS.  Fail: Check 3 is greater than 500 mS. |
| NOTE: As described in the notes to clause 6.2.4, the identification of when input entry has occurred may vary according to the type of RTT system under test. | |

### C.6.3 Caller ID

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT provides caller identification, or similar telecommunications functions are provided. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the information delivered by each function is available in text form.  2. Check that the information delivered by each function is programmatically determinable. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true and either check 2 is true or the functionality is closed  Fail: Check 1 is false or check 2 is false when the functionality is not closed |

### C.6.4 Alternatives to voice-based services

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT provides real-time voice-based communication.  2. The ICT provides voice mail, auto-attendant, or interactive voice response facilities. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the ICT offers users a means to access the information without the use of hearing or speech.  2. Check that a user can carry out the tasks provided by the system without the use of hearing or speech. |
| Result | Pass: Checks 1 and 2 are true  Fail: Check 1 or 2 is false |

### C.6.5 Video communication

#### C.6.5.1 General

Clause 6.5.1 is informative only and contains no requirements requiring test.

#### C.6.5.2 Resolution

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT provides 2-way voice communication.  2. The ICT includes real-time video functionality.  3. The network is operating at least 2 Mbps. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the video communication resolution is QVGA resolution or better. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.6.5.3 Frame rate

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT provides 2-way voice communication.  2. The ICT includes real-time video functionality.  3. The network is operating at least 2 Mbps. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the video communication frame rate is equal to or higher than 20 frames per second. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.6.5.4 Synchronization between audio and video

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT provides 2 way voice communication.  2. The ICT includes real-time video functionality. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the time difference between the speech and video presented to the user is equal to or less than 100 ms. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.6.5.5 Visual indicator of audio with video

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1 ICT provides two-way voice communication  2 ICT has real-time video capabilities |
| Procedure | 1. ICT under test is connected to another ICT providing two-way voice communication that is compatible with the voice communication on the ICT under test.  2. A person speaks into the other ICT  3. Check by observation whether there is a real-time visual indicator of audio activity |
| Result | Pass: Check 3 is true  Fail: Check 3 is false |
| NOTE: The indicator should flicker in real time in a way that reflects the audio activity. | |

#### C. 6.5.6 Speaker identification with video (sign language) communication

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT provides 2 way voice communication.  2. The ICT includes real-time video |
| Procedure | 1 The ICT under test is connected to a compatible ICT that supports video and a person communicates in sign language  2. Check by observation whether the ICT under test provides a means for speaker identification for the sign language users. |
| Result | Pass: Check 2 is true  Fail: Check 2 is false |

### C.6.6 Alternatives to video-based services

Clause 6.6 is advisory only and contains no testable requirements.

## C.7 ICT with video capabilities

### C.7.1 Caption processing technology

#### C.7.1.1 Captioning playback

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT displays or processes video with synchronized audio.  2. Captions are provided in the video. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that there is a mechanism to display the captions. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |
| Type of assessment | Test 2 |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT displays or processes video with synchronized audio.  2. Closed captions are provided by the content. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that there is a mechanism to choose to display the captions. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.7.1.2 Captioning synchronization

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT has a mechanism to display captions. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the mechanism to display the captions preserves the synchronization between the audio and corresponding captions within a tenth of a second of the time stamp of the caption, or the availability of the caption to the player if a live caption. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.7.1.3 Preservation of captioning

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT transmits converts or records video with synchronized audio. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the ICT preserves caption data such that it can be displayed in a manner consistent with clauses 7.1.1 and 7.1.2. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.7.1.4 Captions characteristics and personalisation

Clause 7.1.4 is advisory only and contains no testable requirements.

#### C.7.1.5 Spoken subtitles

Clause 7.1.5 is advisory only and contains no testable requirements.

### C.7.2 Audio description technology

#### C.7.2.1 Audio description playback

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT displays video with synchronized audio. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that there is an explicit and separate mechanism for audio description.  2. Check that there is a mechanism to select and play the audio description to the default audio channel.  3. Check that the ICT enables the user to select and play several audio tracks. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 and 2 are true or 1 is false and 3 is true  Fail: Check 1 is true and 2 is false or 1 is false and 3 is false |

#### C.7.2.2 Audio description synchronization

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT has a mechanism to play audio description. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the synchronization between the audio/visual content and the corresponding audio description is preserved. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.7.2.3 Preservation of audio description

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT transmits converts or records video with synchronized audio. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the ICT preserves audio description data such that it can be played in a manner consistent with clauses 7.2.1 and 7.2.2. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.7.3 User controls for captions and audio description

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT primarily display materials containing video with associated audio content. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that user controls to activate subtitling and audio descriptions are provided to the user at the same level of interaction as the primary media controls. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

## C.8 Hardware

### C.8.1 General

#### C.8.1.1 Generic requirements

Clause 8.1.1 is advisory only and contains no testable requirements.

#### C.8.1.2 Standard connections

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT provides user input or output device connection points. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that one type of connection conforms to an industry standard non-proprietary format.  2. Check that one type of connection conforms to an industry standard non-proprietary format through the use of commercially available adapters. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 or 2 is true  Fail: Checks 1 and 2 are false |
| NOTE: The connections may be physical or wireless connections. | |

#### C.8.1.3 Colour

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The hardware aspects of the ICT conveys visual information using colour coding as a means to indicate an action, to prompt a response, or to distinguish a visual element. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that an alternative form of visual coding is provided. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.8.2 Hardware products with speech output

#### C.8.2.1 Speech volume gain

##### C.8.2.1.1 Speech volume range

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection based on measurement data |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT hardware has speech output. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the ICT is certified to meet ANSI/TIA-4965 [i.2].  2. Measure the level (in dB) of the speech output at the lowest volume setting.  3. Measure the level (in dB) of the speech output at the highest volume setting.  4. Check that the range between 1 and 2 is greater than or equal to 18 dB. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 or 4 is true  Fail: Check 1 and 4 are false |

##### C.8.2.1.2 Incremental volume control

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection based on measurement data |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT hardware has speech output. 2. The volume control is incremental. |
| Procedure | 1. Measure the level (in dB) of the speech output at the lowest volume setting.  2. Check if one intermediate step provides a level 12 dB above the lowest volume level measured in step 1. |
| Result | Pass: Check 2 is true  Fail: Check 2 is false |

#### C.8.2.2 Magnetic coupling

##### C.8.2.2.1 Fixed-line devices

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection based on measurement data |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT hardware is a fixed line communication device with an audio output that is normally held to the ear. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the ICT is certified to meet TIA-1083-A [i.24].  2. Measurements are made according to ETSI ES 200 381-1 [2] which prove that the requirements defined in that standard are fulfilled.  3. The ICT carries the "T" symbol specified in ETSI ETS 300 381 [1] |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 or 2 is true and check 3 is true  Fail: Checks 1 and 2 are false or check 3 is false |

##### C.8.2.2.2 Wireless communication devices

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection based on measurement data |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT hardware is a wireless communication device which is normally held to the ear. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the ICT is certified to meet ANSI/IEEE C63.19 [i.1].  2. Check that the ICT provide a means of magnetic coupling to hearing technologies which meets the requirements of ETSI ES 200 381-2 [3]. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 or 2 is true  Fail: Checks 1 and 2 are false |

### C.8.3 Stationary ICT

#### C.8.3.0 General

Clause 8.3.0 is advisory only and contains no testable requirements.

#### C.8.3.1 Forward or side reach

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT. |
| Procedure | 1. Check whether the ICT conforms to clause 8.3.2.2. 2. Check whether the ICT conforms to clause 8.3.2.3. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 or 2 is true  Fail: Checks 1 and 2 are false |

#### C.8.3.2 Forward reach

##### C.8.3.2.1 Unobstructed high forward reach

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT. 2. No part of the stationary ICT obstructs the forward reach. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that at least one of each type of operable part is located no higher than 1200 mm (48 inches) above the floor of the access space. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.8.3.2.2 Unobstructed low forward reach

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT. 2. No part of the stationary ICT obstructs the forward reach. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that at least one of each type of operable part is located no lower than 380 mm (15 inches) above the floor of the access space. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.8.3.2.3 Obstructed forward reach

###### C.8.3.2.3.1 Clear space

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT.  2. An integral part of the stationary ICT forms an obstruction which hinders to any type of operable part. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the ICT provides a clear space which extends beneath the obstructing element for a distance not less than the required reach depth over the obstruction. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

###### C.8.3.2.3.2 Obstructed (< 510 mm) forward reach

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT.  2. An integral part of the stationary ICT forms an obstruction which is less than 510 mm (20 inches) deep. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the forward reach to at least one of each type of operable part is no higher than 1 220 mm (48 inches) above the floor contact of the ICT. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

###### C.8.3.2.3.3 Obstructed (< 635 mm) forward reach

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT.  2. An integral part of the stationary ICT forms an obstruction which is not less than 510 mm (20 inches) but is less than 635mm (25 inches) deep. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the the forward reach to at least one of each type of operable part is no higher than 1 120 mm (44 inches) above the floor contact of the ICT. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.8.3.2.4 Knee and toe clearance width

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT.  2. The space under an obstacle that is an integral part of the ICT is part of an access space. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the width of the knee clearance is greater than 760 mm (30 inches).  2. Check that the width of the toe clearance is greater than 760 mm (30 inches). |
| Result | Pass: Checks 1 and 2 are true  Fail: Checks 1 or 2 are false |

##### C.8.3.2.5 Toe clearance

a)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT.  2. There is an obstacle that is an integral part of the ICT.  3. There is a toe clearance space under any obstacle that is an integral part of the ICT that is less than 230 mm (9 inches) above the floor. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the toe clearance does not extend more than 635 mm (25 inches) under the obstacle. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

b)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT.  2. There is an obstacle that is an integral part of the ICT.  3. There is a toe clearance space under any obstacle that is an integral part of the ICT that is less than 230 mm (9 inches) above the floor. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the toe clearance is at least 430 mm (17 inches) deep and 230 mm (9 inches) above the floor under the obstacle. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

c)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT.  2. There is an obstacle that is an integral part of the ICT.  3. There is a toe clearance space under any obstacle that is an integral part of the ICT that is less than 230 mm (9 inches) above the floor. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the toe clearance extends no more than 150 mm (6 inches) beyond any obstruction at 230 mm (9 inches) above the floor. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.8.3.2.6 Knee clearance

a)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT.  2. There is an obstacle that is an integral part of the ICT.  3. There is a knee clearance space under the obstacle between 230 mm (9 inches) and 685 mm (25 inches) above the floor. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that there is a knee clearance that extends less than 635 mm (25 inches) under the obstacle at a height of 230 mm (9 inches) above the floor. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

b)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT.  2. There is an obstacle that is an integral part of the ICT.  3. There is a knee clearance space under the obstacle between 230 mm (9 inches) and 685 mm (25 inches) above the floor. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that there is a knee clearance that extends at least 280 mm (11 inches) under the obstacle at a height of 230 mm (9 inches) above the floor. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

c)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT.  2. There is an obstacle that is an integral part of the ICT.  3. There is a knee clearance space under the obstacle between 230 mm (9 inches) and 685 mm (25 inches) above the floor. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that there is a knee clearance that extends more than 205 mm (9 inches) under the obstruction at a height of 685 mm (25 inches) above the floor. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

d)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT.  2. There is an obstacle that is an integral part of the ICT.  3. There is a knee clearance space under the obstacle between 230 mm (9 inches) and 685 mm (25 inches) above the floor. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the reduction in depth of the knee clearance is no greater than 25 mm (1 inch) for each 150 mm (6 inches) in height. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.8.3.3 Side reach

##### C.8.3.3.1 Unobstructed high side reach

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT.  2. Side reach is unobstructed or is obstructed by an element that is an integral part of the stationary ICT which is less than 510 mm (20 inches). |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the high side reach to at least one of each type of operable part is no higher than 1 220 mm (48 inches) above the floor of the access space. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.8.3.3.2 Unobstructed low side reach

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT.  2. Side reach is unobstructed or is obstructed by an element that is an integral part of the stationary ICT which is less than 510 mm (20 inches). |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the low side reach to at least one of each type of operable part is greater than or equal to 380 mm (15 inches) above the floor of the access space. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.8.3.3.3 Obstructed side reach

###### C.8.3.3.3.1 Obstructed (< 255 mm) side reach

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT.  2. There is an obstruction, less than or equal to 255 mm (10 inches) in depth, that is an integral part of the ICT. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the the high side reach to at least one of each type of operable part is no higher than 1 220 mm (48 inches) above the floor of the access space. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

###### C.8.3.3.3.2 Obstructed (< 610 mm) side reach

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT. 2. There is an obstruction, greater than 255 mm (10 inches) and no more than 610mm (24 inches) in depth, that is an integral part of the ICT. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the high side reach to at least one of each type of operable part is no higher than 1 170 mm (46 inches) above the floor of the access space. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.8.3.4 Clear floor or ground space

##### C.8.3.4.1 Change in level

###### C.8.3.4.1.a Change in level (a)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT that has a floor within it.  2. The floor has a change in level. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the change in level is ramped with a slope less than 1:48. |
| Result | If check 1 is true then this recommendation is followed. |

###### C.8.3.4.1.b Change in level (b)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT that has a floor within it.  2. The floor has a change in level.  3. The change in level is less than or equal to 6,4 mm. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the step is vertical or ramped. |
| Result | If check 1 is true then this recommendation is followed. |

###### C.8.3.4.1.c Change in level (c)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT that has a floor within it.  2. The floor has a change in level.  3. The change in level is less than or equal to 13 mm. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the ramp has a slope less than 1:2. |
| Result | If check 1 is true then this recommendation is followed. |

##### C.8.3.4.2 Clear floor or ground space

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT that has an operating area within it. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the operating area provides a clear floor area with minimum rectangular dimensions of 760 mm n one edge of 760 mm and 1 220 mm on the other edge. |
| Result | If check 1 is true then this recommendation is followed. |

##### C.8.3.4.3 Approach

###### C.8.3.4.3.1 General

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT that has an access space inside it. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that one full side of the space is unobstructed. |
| Result | If check 1 is true then this recommendation is followed. |

###### C.8.3.4.3.2 Forward Approach

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT containing an alcove  2. The operating area is within the alcove.  3. The depth of the alcove is greater than 610 mm.  4. A forward approach is necessary. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the width of the alcove is greater than 915 mm. |
| Result | If check 1 is true then this recommendation is followed. |

###### C.8.3.4.3.3 Parallel Approach

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT containing an alcove  2. The operating area is within the alcove..  3. The depth of the alcove is greater than 380 mm.  4. A parallel approach is possible. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the width of the access space is greater than 1 525 mm. |
| Result | If check 1 is true then this recommendation is followed. |

#### C.8.3.5 Visibility

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT.  2. One or more display screens are provided. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that at least one of each type of display screen is positioned such that the information on the screen is legible from a point located 1 015 mm (40 inches) above the centre of the floor of the operating area. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.8.3.6 Installation instructions

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is stationary ICT. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that installation instructions are made available.  2. Check that the instructions give guidance on how to install the ICT in a manner that ensures that the dimensions of the installed ICT conform to clauses 8.3.2 to 8.3.4. 3. Check that the instructions say that the installers should also take into account applicable requirements for accessibility of the built environment as they apply to the installation of the ICT. |
| Result | Pass: Checks 1, 2 and 3 are true  Fail: Checks 1 or 2 or 3 are false |

### C.8.4 Mechanically operable parts

#### C.8.4.1 Numeric keys

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT has physical numeric keys arranged in a 12-key telephone keypad layout. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the number five key is tactilely distinct from the other keys of the keypad. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.8.4.2 Operation of mechanical parts

##### C.8.4.2.1 Means of operation of mechanical parts

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT has operable parts that requires grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist to operate. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that there is an accessible alternative means of operation that does not require these actions. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.8.4.2.2 Force of operation of mechanical parts

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT has a control which requires a force greater than 22,2 N to operate it. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that an accessible alternative means of operation is provided that requires a force less than or equal to 22,2 N. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.8.4.3 Keys, tickets and fare cards

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. ICT provides keys, tickets or fare cards, and their orientation is important for further use. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that keys, tickets or fare cards have an orientation that is tactilely discernible. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.8.5 Tactile indication of speech mode

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is designed for shared use.  2. Speech output is available. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that a tactile indication of the means to initiate the speech mode of operation is provided. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

## C.9 Web

### C.9.0 General (informative)

Clause 9.0 is informative only and contains no requirements requiring test.

### C.9.1 Perceivable

#### C.9.1.1 Text alternatives

##### C.9.1.1.1 Non-text content

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.1.1 Non-text content](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#non-text-content). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.9.1.2 Time-based media

##### C.9.1.2.1 Audio-only and video-only (pre-recorded)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.1 Audio-only and Video-only (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-only-and-video-only-prerecorded). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.1.2.2 Captions (pre-recorded)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.2 Captions (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#captions-prerecorded). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.1.2.3 Audio description or media alternative (pre-recorded)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.3 Audio Description or Media Alternative (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-description-or-media-alternative-prerecorded). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.1.2.4 Captions (live)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.4 Captions (Live)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#captions-live). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.1.2.5 Audio description (pre-recorded)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.5 Audio Description (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-description-prerecorded). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.9.1.3 Adaptable

##### C.9.1.3.1 Info and relationships

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.1 Info and Relationships](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#info-and-relationships). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.1.3.2 Meaningful sequence

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.2 Meaningful Sequence](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#meaningful-sequence). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.1.3.3 Sensory characteristics

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.3 Sensory Characteristics](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#sensory-characteristics). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.1.3.4 Orientation

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.4 Orientation](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#orientation). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.1.3.5 Identify input purpose

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.5 Identify Input Purpose](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#identify-input-purpose). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.9.1.4 Distinguishable

##### C.9.1.4.1 Use of colour

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.1 Use of Color](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#use-of-color). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.1.4.2 Audio control

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.2 Audio Control](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-control). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.1.4.3 Contrast (minimum)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.3 Contrast (Minimum)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#contrast-minimum). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.1.4.4 Resize text

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.4 Resize text](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#resize-text). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.1.4.5 Images of text

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.5 Images of Text](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#images-of-text). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.1.4.6 Void

##### C.9.1.4.7 Void

##### C.9.1.4.8 Void

##### C.9.1.4.9 Void

##### C.9.1.4.10 Reflow

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.10 Reflow](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#reflow). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.1.4.11 Non-text contrast

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.11 Non-text Contrast](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#non-text-contrast). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.1.4.12 Text spacing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.12 Text spacing](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#text-spacing). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.1.4.13 Content on hover or focus

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.13 Content on Hover or Focus](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#content-on-hover-or-focus). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.9.2 Operable

#### C.9.2.1 Keyboard accessible

##### C.9.2.1.1 Keyboard

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.1.1 Keyboard](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#keyboard). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.2.1.2 No keyboard trap

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.1.2 No Keyboard Trap](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#no-keyboard-trap). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.2.1.3 Void

##### C.9.2.1.4 Character key shortcuts

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.1.4 Character Key Shortcuts](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#character-key-shortcuts). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.9.2.2 Enough time

##### C.9.2.2.1 Timing adjustable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.2.1 Timing Adjustable](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#timing-adjustable). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.2.2.2 Pause, stop, hide

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.2.2 Pause, Stop, Hide](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#pause-stop-hide). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.9.2.3 Seizures and physical reactions

##### C.9.2.3.1 Three flashes or below threshold

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.3.1 Three Flashes or Below Threshold](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#three-flashes-or-below-threshold). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.9.2.4 Navigable

##### C.9.2.4.1 Bypass blocks

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.1 Bypass Blocks](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#bypass-blocks). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.2.4.2 Page titled

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.2 Page Titled](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#page-titled). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.2.4.3 Focus Order

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.3 Focus Order](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#focus-order). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.2.4.4 Link purpose (in context)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.4 Link Purpose (In Context)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#link-purpose-in-context). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.2.4.5 Multiple ways

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.5 Multiple Ways](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#multiple-ways). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.2.4.6 Headings and labels

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.6 Headings and Labels](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#headings-and-labels). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.2.4.7 Focus visible

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.7 Focus Visible](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#focus-visible). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.9.2.5 Input modalities

##### C.9.2.5.1 Pointer gestures

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.5.1 Pointer Gestures](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#pointer-gestures). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.2.5.2 Pointer cancellation

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.5.2 Pointer Cancellation](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#pointer-cancellation). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.2.5.3 Label in name

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.5.3 Label in Name](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#label-in-name). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.2.5.4 Motion actuation

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.5.4 Motion Actuation](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#motion-actuation). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.9.3 Understandable

#### C.9.3.1 Readable

##### C.9.3.1.1 Language of page

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.1.1 Language of Page](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#language-of-page). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.3.1.2 Language of parts

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.1.2 Language of Parts](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#language-of-parts). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.9.3.2 Predictable

##### C.9.3.2.1 On focus

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.2.1 On Focus](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#on-focus). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.3.2.2 On input

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.2.2 On Input](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#on-input). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.3.2.3 Consistent navigation

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.2.3 Consistent Navigation](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#consistent-navigation). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.3.2.4 Consistent identification

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.2.4 Consistent Identification](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#consistent-identification). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.9.3.3 Input assistance

##### C.9.3.3.1 Error identification

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.1 Error Identification](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#error-identification). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.3.3.2 Labels or instructions

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.2 Labels or Instructions](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#labels-or-instructions). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.3.3.3 Error suggestion

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.3 Error Suggestion](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#error-suggestion). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.3.3.4 Error prevention (legal, financial, data)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.4 Error Prevention (Legal, Financial, Data)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#error-prevention-legal-financial-data). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.9.4 Robust

#### C.9.4.1 Compatible

##### C.9.4.1.1 Parsing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 4.1.1 Parsing](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#parsing). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.4.1.2 Name, role, value

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 4.1.2 Name, Role, Value](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#name-role-value). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.9.4.1.3 Status messages

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 4.1.3 Status Messages](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#status-messages). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.9.5 WCAG 2.1 conformance requirements

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a web page. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the web page satisfies WCAG 2.1 [5] conformance requirement "1: Conformance level" at Level AA.  2. Check that the web page satisfies WCAG 2.1 [5] conformance requirement "2: Full pages".  3. Check that the web page satisfies WCAG 2.1 [5] conformance requirement "3: Complete processes".  4. Check that the web page satisfies WCAG 2.1 [5] conformance requirement "4: Only Accessibility-Supported Ways of Using Technologies".  5. Check that the web page satisfies WCAG 2.1 [5] conformance requirement "5: Non-interference". |
| Result | Pass: All checks are true  Fail: Any check is false |

## C.10 Non-web documents

### C.10.0 General (informative)

Clause 10.0 is advisory only and contains no requirements requiring test.

### C.10.1 Perceivable

#### C.10.1.1 Text alternatives

##### C.10.1.1.1 Non-text content

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.1.1 Non-text content](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#non-text-content). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.10.1.2 Time-based media

##### C.10.1.2.1 Audio-only and video-only (pre-recorded)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.1 Audio-only and Video-only (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-only-and-video-only-prerecorded). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.1.2.2 Captions (pre-recorded)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.2 Captions (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#captions-prerecorded). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.1.2.3 Audio description or media alternative (pre-recorded)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.3 Audio Description or Media Alternative (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-description-or-media-alternative-prerecorded). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.1.2.4 Captions (live)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.4 Captions (Live)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#captions-live). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.1.2.5 Audio description (pre-recorded)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.5 Audio Description (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-description-prerecorded). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.10.1.3 Adaptable

##### C.10.1.3.1 Info and relationships

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.1 Info and Relationships](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#info-and-relationships). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.1.3.2 Meaningful sequence

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.2 Meaningful Sequence](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#meaningful-sequence). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.1.3.3 Sensory characteristics

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.3 Sensory Characteristics](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#sensory-characteristics). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.1.3.4 Orientation

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.4 Orientation](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#orientation). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.1.3.5 Identify input purpose

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.5 Identify Input Purpose](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#identify-input-purpose). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.10.1.4 Distinguishable

##### C.10.1.4.1 Use of colour

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.1 Use of Color](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#use-of-color). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.1.4.2 Audio control

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 10.1. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.1.4.3 Contrast (minimum)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.3 Contrast (Minimum)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#contrast-minimum). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.1.4.4 Resize text

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.4 Resize text](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#resize-text). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.1.4.5 Images of text

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.5 Images of Text](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#images-of-text). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.1.4.6 Void

##### C.10.1.4.7 Void

##### C.10.1.4.8 Void

##### C.10.1.4.9 Void

##### C.10.1.4.10 Reflow

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 10.2. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.1.4.11 Non-text contrast

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document that does not have a fixed size content layout area that is essential to the information being conveyed. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.11 Non-text Contrast](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#non-text-contrast). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.1.4.12 Text spacing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.12 Text spacing](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#text-spacing). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.1.4.13 Content on hover or focus

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.13 Content on Hover or Focus](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#content-on-hover-or-focus). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.10.2 Operable

#### C.10.2.1 Keyboard accessible

##### C.10.2.1.1 Keyboard

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.1.1 Keyboard](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#keyboard). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.2.1.2 No keyboard trap

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 10.3. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.2.1.3 Void

##### C.10.2.1.4 Character key shortcuts

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.1.4 Character Key Shortcuts](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#character-key-shortcuts). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.10.2.2 Enough time

##### C.10.2.2.1 Timing adjustable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 10.4. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.2.2.2 Pause, stop, hide

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 10.5. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.10.2.3 Seizures and physical reactions

##### C.10.2.3.1 Three flashes or below threshold

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 10.6. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.10.2.4 Navigable

##### C.10.2.4.1 Void

##### C.10.2.4.2 Document titled

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 10.7. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.2.4.3 Focus order

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 10.8. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.2.4.4 Link purpose (in context)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.4 Link Purpose (In Context)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#link-purpose-in-context). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.2.4.5 Void

##### C.10.2.4.6 Headings and labels

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.6 Headings and Labels](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#headings-and-labels). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.2.4.7 Focus visible

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.7 Focus Visible](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#focus-visible). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.10.2.5 Input modalities

##### C.10.2.5.1 Pointer gestures

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 10.9 |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.2.5.2 Pointer cancellation

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail the success criterion in Table 10.10 |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.2.5.3 Label in name

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.5.3 Label in Name](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#label-in-name). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.2.5.4 Motion actuation

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.5.4 Motion Actuation](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#motion-actuation). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.10.3 Understandable

#### C.10.3.1 Readable

##### C.10.3.1.1 Language of document

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 10.11. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.3.1.2 Language of parts

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 10.12. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.10.3.2 Predictable

##### C.10.3.2.1 On focus

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.2.1 On Focus](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#on-focus). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.3.2.2 On input

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.2.2 On Input](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#on-input). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.3.2.3 Void

##### C.10.3.2.4 Void

#### C.10.3.3 Input assistance

##### C.10.3.3.1 Error identification

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.1 Error Identification](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#error-identification). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.3.3.2 Labels or instructions

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.2 Labels or Instructions](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#labels-or-instructions). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.3.3.3 Error suggestion

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.3 Error Suggestion](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#error-suggestion) [4]. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.3.3.4 Error prevention (legal, financial, data)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 10.13. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.10.4 Robust

#### C.10.4.1 Compatible

##### C.10.4.1.1 Parsing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 10.14. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.4.1.2 Name, role, value

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the document does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 10.15. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.10.4.1.3 Status messages

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is a non-web document. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 4.1.3 Status Messages](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#status-messages) |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.10.5 Caption positioning

Clause 10.5 is advisory only and contains no testable requirements.

### C.10.6 Audio description timing

Clause 10.6 is advisory only and contains no testable requirements.

## C.11 Software

### C.11.0 General

Clause 11.0 is advisory only and contains no requirements requiring test.

### C.11.1 Perceivable

#### C.11.1.1 Text alternatives

##### C.11.1.1.1 Non-text content

###### C.11.1.1.1.1 Non-text content (screen reading supported open functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The software provides support to assistive technologies for screen reading. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.1.1 Non-text Content](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#non-text-content). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

###### C.11.1.1.1.2 Non-text content (closed functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The user interface is closed to assistive technologies for screen reading.  3. Non-text content is presented to users via speech output. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that speech output is provided as an alternative for non-text content.  2. Check that the non-text content is not pure decoration.  3. Check that the non-text content is not used only for visual formatting.  4. Check that the speech output follows the guidance for "text alternative" described in [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.1.1 Non-text Content](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#non-text-content). |
| Result | Pass: Check (1 and 2 and 3 and 4 are true) or (1 and 2 are false) or (1 and 3 are false)  Fail: Checks (1 true and 2 false) or (1 true and 3 false) or (1 and 2 and 3 are true and 4 is false) |

#### C.11.1.2 Time-based media

##### C.11.1.2.1 Audio-only and video-only (pre-recorded)

###### C.11.1.2.1.1 Audio-only and video-only (pre-recorded - open functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The software provides support to assistive technologies for screen reading.  3. Pre-recorded auditory information is not needed to enable the use of closed functions of ICT. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.1 Audio-only and Video-only (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-only-and-video-only-prerecorded). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

###### C.11.1.2.1.2 Audio-only and video-only (pre-recorded - closed functionality)

C.11.1.2.1.2.1 Pre-recorded audio-only (closed functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The user interface is closed to assistive technologies for screen reading.  3. Pre-recorded auditory information is needed to enable the use of closed functions of ICT. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the visual information is equivalent to the pre-recorded auditory output. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

C.11.1.2.1.2.2 Pre-recorded video-only (closed functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The user interface is closed to assistive technologies for screen reading.  3. Pre-recorded video content is needed to enable the use of closed functions of ICT.  4. Speech output is provided as non-visual access to non-text content displayed on closed functionality. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the speech output presents equivalent information for the pre-recorded video content. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.1.2.2 Captions (pre-recorded)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.2 Captions (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#captions-prerecorded). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.1.2.3 Audio description or media alternative (pre-recorded)

###### C.11.1.2.3.1 Audio description or media alternative (pre-recorded - open functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The software provides support to assistive technologies for screen reading. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.3 Audio Description or Media Alternative (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-description-or-media-alternative-prerecorded). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

###### C.11.1.2.3.2 Audio description or media alternative (pre-recorded - closed functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The user interface is closed to assistive technologies for screen reading.  3. Speech output is provided as non-visual access to non-text content displayed on closed functionality. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the speech output presents equivalent information for the pre-recorded video content. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.1.2.4 Captions (live)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.4 Captions (Live)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#captions-live). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.1.2.5 Audio description (pre-recorded)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.2.5 Audio Description (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-description-prerecorded). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.11.1.3 Adaptable

##### C.11.1.3.1 Info and relationships

###### C.11.1.3.1.1 Info and relationships (open functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The software provides support to assistive technologies for screen reading. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.1 Info and Relationships](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#info-and-relationships). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

###### C.11.1.3.1.2 Info and relationships (closed functionality)

Clause 11.1.3.1.2 is advisory only and contains no testable requirements.

##### C.11.1.3.2 Meaningful sequence

###### C.11.1.3.2.1 Meaningful sequence (open functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The software provides support to assistive technologies for screen reading. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.2 Meaningful Sequence](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#meaningful-sequence). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

###### C.11.1.3.2.2 Meaningful sequence (closed functionality)

Clause 11.1.3.2.2 is advisory only and contains no testable requirements.

##### C.11.1.3.3 Sensory characteristics

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.3 Sensory Characteristics](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#sensory-characteristics). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.1.3.4 Orientation

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.4 Orientation](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#orientation). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.1.3.5 Identify input purpose

###### C.11.1.3.5.1 Identify input purpose (open functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The software provides support to assistive technologies for screen reading. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.3.5 Identify Input Purpose](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#identify-input-purpose). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

###### C.11.1.3.5.2 Identify input purpose (closed functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The software does not provide support to assistive technologies for screen reading.  3. Auditory output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the auditory output is delivered by a mechanism included in or provided with the ICT.  2. Check that the auditory output is delivered by a personal headset that can be connected through a 3,5 mm audio jack or an industry standard connection without requiring the use of vision.  3. Check that the auditory output comprises of purposes from the [Input Purposes for User Interface Components section](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#input-purposes). |
| Result | Pass: Checks (1 or 2) is true and 3 is true  Fail: Checks (1 and 2) are false or 3 is false |

#### C.11.1.4 Distinguishable

##### C.11.1.4.1 Use of colour

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.1 Use of Color](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#use-of-color). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.1.4.2 Audio control

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 11.1. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.1.4.3 Contrast (minimum)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.3 Contrast (Minimum)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#contrast-minimum). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.1.4.4 Resize text

###### C.11.1.4.4.1 Resize text (open functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The software provides support to enlargement features of platform or assistive technology. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.4 Resize text](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#resize-text). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

###### C.11.1.4.4.2 Resize text (closed functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and measurement |
| Pre-conditions | 1. ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The user interface is closed to enlargement features of platform or assistive technology.  3. A viewing distance is specified by the supplier. |
| Procedure | 1. Measure the height of a capital letter H.  2. Check that it subtends an angle of at least 0,7 degrees at the specified viewing distance. |
| Result | Pass: Check 2 is true  Fail: Check 2 is false |

##### C.11.1.4.5 Images of text

###### C.11.1.4.5.1 Images of text (open functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The software provides support to assistive technologies for screen reading. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.5 Images of Text](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#images-of-text). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

###### C.11.1.4.5.2 Images of text (closed functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The user interface is closed to assistive technologies for screen reading.  3. Non-text content is presented to users via speech output. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that speech output is provided as an alternative for non-text content.  2. Check that the non-text content is not pure decoration.  3. Check that the non-text content is not used only for visual formatting.  4. Check that the speech output follows the guidance for "text alternative" described in [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.1.1 Non-text Content](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#non-text-content). |
| Result | Pass: Check (1 and 2 and 3 and 4 are true) or (1 and 2 are false) or (1 and 3 are false)  Fail: Checks (1 true and 2 false) or (1 true and 3 false) or (1 and 2 and 3 are true and 4 is false) |

##### C.11.1.4.6 Void

##### C.11.1.4.7 Void

##### C.11.1.4.8 Void

##### C.11.1.4.9 Void

##### C.11.1.4.10 Reflow

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 11.2 |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.1.4.11 Non-text contrast

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail the Success Criterion [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.11 Non-text Contrast](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#non-text-contrast). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.1.4.12 Text spacing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail the Success Criterion [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.12 Text spacing](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#text-spacing). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.1.4.13 Content on hover or focus

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 1.4.13 Content on hover or focus](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#content-on-hover-or-focus). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.11.2 Operable

#### C.11.2.1 Keyboard accessible

##### C.11.2.1.1 Keyboard

###### C.11.2.1.1.1 Keyboard (open functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The software provides support to keyboards or a keyboard interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.1.1 Keyboard](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#keyboard). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

###### C.11.2.1.1.2 Keyboard (closed functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The user interface is closed to keyboards or keyboard interfaces. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that all functionality of the user interface is operable without vision. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.2.1.2 No keyboard trap

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 11.3. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.2.1.3 Void

##### C.11.2.1.4 Character key shortcuts

###### C.11.2.1.4.1 Character key shortcuts (open functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The software provides support to at least one assistive technology. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.1.4 Character Key Shortcuts](https://w3c.github.io/wcag21/guidelines/#character-key-shortcuts). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

###### C.11.2.1.4.2 Character key shortcuts (closed functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. ICT functionality is closed to keyboards or keyboard interfaces. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that all functionality is operable without vision. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.11.2.2 Enough time

##### C.11.2.2.1 Timing adjustable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 11.4. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.2.2.2 Pause, stop, hide

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 11.5. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.11.2.3 Seizures and physical reactions

##### C.11.2.3.1 Three flashes or below threshold

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 11.6. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.11.2.4 Navigable

##### C.11.2.4.1 Void

##### C.11.2.4.2 Void

##### C.11.2.4.3 Focus order

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 11.7. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.2.4.4 Link purpose (in context)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.4 Link Purpose (In Context)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#link-purpose-in-context). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.2.4.5 Void

##### C.11.2.4.6 Headings and labels

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.6 Headings and Labels](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#headings-and-labels). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.2.4.7 Focus visible

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.4.7 Focus Visible](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#focus-visible). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.11.2.5 Input modalities

##### C.11.2.5.1 Pointer gestures

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The software provides support to at least one assistive technology. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 11.8. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.2.5.2 Pointer cancellation

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The software provides support to at least one assistive technology. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 11.9. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.2.5.3 Label in name

###### C.11.2.5.3.1 Label in name (open functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The software provides support to at least one assistive technology. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.5.3 Label in Name](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#label-in-name). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

###### C.11.2.5.3.2 Label in name (closed functionality)

Clause 11.2.5.3.2 is informative only and contains no requirements requiring test.

##### C.11.2.5.4 Motion actuation

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The software provides support to at least one assistive technology. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 2.5.4 Motion Actuation](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#motion-actuation). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.11.3 Understandable

#### C.11.3.1 Readable

##### C.11.3.1.1 Language of software

###### C.11.3.1.1.1 Language of software (open functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The software provides support to assistive technologies for screen reading. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 11.10. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

###### C.11.3.1.1.2 Language of software (closed functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The user interface is closed to assistive technologies for screen reading.  3. The speech output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality.  4. The speech output is not proper names, technical terms, words of indeterminate. language, and words or phrases that have become part of the vernacular of the immediately surrounding text.  5. The content is not generated externally and is under the control of the ICT vendor.  6. The displayed languages can be selected using non-visual access.  7. The user has not selected a speech language that is different from the language of the displayed content. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the speech output is in the same human language of the displayed content provided. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.3.1.2 Void

#### C.11.3.2 Predictable

##### C.11.3.2.1 On focus

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.2.1 On Focus](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#on-focus). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.3.2.2 On input

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.2.2 On Input](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#on-input). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.3.2.3 Void

##### C.11.3.2.4 Void

#### C.11.3.3 Input assistance

##### C.11.3.3.1 Error identification

###### C.11.3.3.1.1 Error identification (open functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The software provides support to assistive technologies for screen reading. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.1 Error Identification](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#error-identification). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

###### C.11.3.3.1.2 Error Identification (closed functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The user interface is closed to assistive technologies for screen reading.  3. Speech output is provided as non-visual access to closed functionality.  4. An input error is automatically detected. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that speech output identifies the item that is in error.  2. Check that the speech output describes the item that is in error. |
| Result | Pass: Checks 1 and 2 are true  Fail: Check 1 or check 2 false |

##### C.11.3.3.2 Labels or instructions

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.2 Labels or Instructions](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#labels-or-instructions). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.3.3.3 Error suggestion

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 3.3.3 Error Suggestion](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#error-suggestion). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.3.3.4 Error prevention (legal, financial, data)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 11.11. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.11.4 Robust

#### C.11.4.1 Compatible

##### C.11.4.1.1 Parsing

###### C.11.4.1.1.1 Parsing (open functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The software provides support to at least one assistive technology. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 11.12. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

###### C.11.4.1.1.2 Parsing (closed functionality)

Clause 11.4.1.1.2 contains no requirements requiring test.

##### C.11.4.1.2 Name, role, value

###### C.11.4.1.2.1 Name, role, value (open functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The software provides support to at least one assistive technology. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail the Success Criterion in Table 11.13. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

###### C.11.4.1.2.2 Name, role, value (closed functionality)

Clause 11.4.1.2.2 contains no testable requirements.

##### C.11.4.1.3 Status messages

###### C.11.4.1.3.1 Status messages (open functionality)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is non-web software that provides a user interface.  2. The software provides support to assistive technologies for screen reading. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software does not fail [WCAG 2.1 Success Criterion 4.1.3 Status messages](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#status-messages) |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

###### C.11.4.1.3.2 Status messages (closed functionality)

Clause 11.4.1.3.2 contains no testable requirements.

### C.11.5 Interoperability with assistive technology

#### C.11.5.1 Closed functionality

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software has closed functionality. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the closed functionality conforms to clause 5.1. |
| Result | If check 1 is true, the software is not required to conform to clauses 11.5.2 to 11.5.17  If check 1 is false the software is required to conform to clauses 11.5.2 to 11.5.17 |

#### C.11.5.2 Accessibility services

##### C.11.5.2.1 Platform accessibility service support for software that provides a user interface

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software evaluated is platform software. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the platform software documentation includes information about platform services that may be used by software that provides a user interface to interoperate with assistive technology. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.5.2.2 Platform accessibility service support for assistive technologies

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software evaluated is platform software. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the platform software documentation includes information about platform accessibility services that enables assistive technology to interoperate with software that provides a user interface running on the platform software. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.5.2.3 Use of accessibility services

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software evaluated is software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software uses the applicable documented platform accessibility services.  2. Check that the software can meet the applicable requirements 11.5.2.5 to 11.5.2.17 whilst using the documented platform accessibility services.  3. Check that the software can meet requirements 11.5.2.5 to 11.5.2.17 whilst using the documented platform accessibility services and other documented services. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true and check 2 or check 3 is true  Fail: Check 1 or check 3 is false |

##### C.11.5.2.4 Assistive technology

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT is assistive technology. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the assistive technology uses the documented platform accessibility services. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

##### C.11.5.2.5 Object information

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software evaluated is software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the user interface element's role is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.  2. Check that the user interface element's state(s) is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.  3. Check that the user interface element's boundary is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.  4. Check that the user interface element's name is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.  5. Check that the user interface element's description is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies. |
| Result | Pass: Checks 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 are true  Fail: Check 1 or 2 or 3 or 4 or 5 is false |

##### C.11.5.2.6 Row, column, and headers

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software evaluated is software that provides a user interface.  2. There are data tables in the user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Select a data table in which the tests are to be performed.  2. Check that each cell's row is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.  3. Check that each cell's column is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.  4. Check that each cell's row header, if the row header exists, is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.  5. Check that each cell's column header, if the column header exists, is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies. |
| Result | Pass: Checks 2, 3, 4 and 5 are true  Fail: Check 2 or 3 or 4 or 5 is false |

##### C.11.5.2.7 Values

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software evaluated is software that provides a user interface.  2. There are user interface elements that can have values. |
| Procedure | 1. Select a user interface element that can have a value.  2. Check that the current value is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.  3. If the user interface element conveys information about a range of values, check that the minimum value is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.  4. If the user interface element conveys information about a range of values, check that the maximum value is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies. |
| Result | Pass: Checks 2, 3 and 4 are true  Fail: Check 2 or 3 or 4 is false |

##### C.11.5.2.8 Label relationships

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software evaluated is software that provides a user interface.  2. There are user interface elements that are labels of other user interface elements. |
| Procedure | 1. Obtain the information of each user interface element.  2. Check that the user interface element's information includes the relationship with the user interface element that is its label, if the current user interface element has a label, and that this relationship is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.  3. Check that the user interface element's information includes the relationship with the user interface element that it is labelling, if the current user interface element is a label, and that this relationship is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies. |
| Result | Pass: Checks 2 or 3 are true  Fail: Check 2 and 3 are false |

##### C.11.5.2.9 Parent-child relationships

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software evaluated is software that provides a user interface.  2. There are user interface elements that are parents of other user interface elements in a hierarchical structure. |
| Procedure | 1. For user interface elements that have a parent, check that the user interface element's information includes the relationship with the user interface element that is its parent.  2. Check that the user interface elements that are parents of the user interface element selected in check 1, include the relationship with the user interface elements that are its children in their information, and that this relationship is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.  3. For user interface elements that are a parent of other user interface elements, check that the user interface element's information includes the relationship with the user interface elements that are its children, and that this relationship is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.  4. Check that the user interface elements that are a child of the user interface element selected in check 3, include the relationship with the user interface elements that are its parents in their information, and that this relationship is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies. |
| Result | Pass: Checks 1 or 2 is true and check 3 or 4 is true  Fail: Checks 1 and 2 are false or check 3 and 4 are false |
| NOTE: For this requirement it is enough that one of the two directions of a parent-child relationship is programmatically determinable. This is the reason why the requirement checks are in pairs and why the requirement is met if one member of each pair is true. | |

##### C.11.5.2.10 Text

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software evaluated is software that provides a user interface.  2. There is text rendered to the screen. |
| Procedure | 1. For instances of text rendered to the screen, check that the text's information includes its text content, and that this information is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.  2. For instances of text rendered to the screen, check that the text's information includes its attributes, and that this information is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.  3. For instances of text rendered to the screen, check that the text's information includes its boundary, and that this information is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies. |
| Result | Pass: Checks 1, 2 and 3 are true  Fail: Check 1 or 2 or 3 is false |

##### C.11.5.2.11 List of available actions

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software evaluated is software that provides a user interface.  2. There are user interface elements that have actions that can be executed by the user. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the user interface element's information includes the list of actions that can be executed.  2. Check that this list is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies. |
| Result | Pass: Checks 1 and 2 are true  Fail: Check 1 or 2 is false |

##### C.11.5.2.12 Execution of available actions

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software evaluated is software that provides a user interface.  2. There are user interface elements that have actions that can be executed by the user.  3. The security requirements permit assistive technology to programmatically execute user actions. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the user interface element's information includes the list of actions that can be executed by assistive technologies according to 11.5.2.11.  2. Check that all the actions in the list can successfully be executed by assistive technologies. |
| Result | Pass: Checks 1 and 2 are true  Fail: Check 1 or 2 is false |

##### C.11.5.2.13 Tracking of focus and selection attributes

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software evaluated is software that provides a user interface.  2. There are user interface elements that enable text editing. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the user interface element's information includes mechanisms to track focus, text insertion point and selection attributes.  2. Check that this information is programmatically determinable by assistive technologies.  3. Activate those tracking mechanisms.  4. As a user, use the text editing functionality in the evaluated software product.  5. Check that the tracking of focus, text insertion point and selection attributes work. |
| Result | Pass: Checks 2 and 5 are true  Fail: Check 1 or 5 is false |

##### C.11.5.2.14 Modification of focus and selection attributes

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software evaluated is software that provides a user interface.  2. There are user interface elements that can receive focus or that enable text editing.  3. The security requirements permit platform software to programmatically modify focus, text insertion point and selection attributes of user interface elements. |
| Procedure | 1. For user interface elements that can receive focus and where the focus can be modified by a user without the use of assistive technology, check that the focus can be programmatically modified by assistive technologies.  2. For user interface elements that enable text editing by a user without the use of assistive technology, check that the position of the text insertion point can be programmatically modified by assistive technologies.  3. For user interface elements that enable text editing, check that the selection attributes can be programmatically modified by assistive technologies where they can be modified by user without the use of assistive technology. |
| Result | Pass: All checks are true  Fail: Any check is false |

##### C.11.5.2.15 Change notification

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software evaluated is software that provides a user interface. |
| Procedure | 1. Activate notifications of changes in the user interface elements.  2. Check that notifications about changes in object information (role, state, boundary, name and description) are sent to assistive technologies, if this information changes in the software user interface.  3. Check that notifications about changes in row, column and headers of data tables are sent to assistive technologies, if this information changes in the software.  4. Check that notifications about changes in values (current value, minimum value and maximum value) are sent, if this information changes in the software.  5. Check that notifications about changes in label relationships are sent o assistive technologies, if this information changes in the software.  6. Check that notifications about changes in parent-child relationships are sent to assistive technologies, if this information changes in the software.  7. Check notifications about changes in text (text contents, text attributes and the boundary of text rendered to the screen) are sent to assistive technologies, if this information changes in the software.  8. Check that notifications about changes in the list of available actions are sent to assistive technologies, if this information changes in the software.  9. Check that notifications about changes in focus, text insertion point and selection attributes are sent to assistive technologies, if this information changes in the software. |
| Result | Pass: Checks 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 are true  Fail: Check 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 is false |

##### C.11.5.2.16 Modifications of states and properties

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software evaluated is software that provides a user interface.  2. There are user interface elements whose state or properties can be modified by a user without the use of assistive technology.  3. The security requirements permit assistive technology to programmatically modify states and properties of user interface elements. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the state of user interface elements, whose state can be modified by a user without the use of assistive technology, can be programmatically modified by assistive technologies.  2. Check the properties of user interface elements, whose properties can be modified by a user without the use of assistive technologies, can be programmatically modified by assistive technologies. |
| Result | Pass: All checks are true  Fail: Any check is false |

##### C.11.5.2.17 Modifications of values and text

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software evaluated is software that provides a user interface.  2. There are user interface elements whose values or text can be modified by a user without the use of assistive technology.  3. The security requirements permit assistive technology to programmatically modify values and text of user interface elements. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the values of user interface elements, whose values can be modified by a user without the use of assistive technology, can be modified by assistive technologies using the input methods of the platform.  2. Check that the text of user interface elements, whose text can be modified by a user without the use of assistive technology, can be modified by assistive technologies using the input methods of the platform. |
| Result | Pass: all checks are true  Fail: any check is false |

### C.11.6 Documented accessibility usage

#### C.11.6.1 User control of accessibility features

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. There are platform features that are defined in the platform documentation as accessibility features intended for users. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that sufficient modes of operation exists where user control over platform features, that are defined in the platform documentation as accessibility features intended for users, is possible. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.11.6.2 No disruption of accessibility features

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. There are platform features that are defined in the platform documentation as accessibility features. |
| Procedure | 1. Check if software that provides a user interface disrupts normal operation of platform accessibility features.  2. Check if the disruption was specifically requested or confirmed by the user. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is false or both checks are true  Fail: Check 1 is true and check 2 is false |

### C.11.7 User preferences

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software is software that provides a user interface. 2. The software has settings for language, colour, contrast, font type, font size, or focus cursor, that correspond to platform settings. 3. The software is not designed to be isolated from its underlying platforms. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the software provides a mode of operation that follows the platform settings. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.11.8 Authoring tools

#### C.11.8.1 Content technology

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software is an authoring tool.  2. The output format of the authoring tool supports information required for accessibility. |
| Procedure | 1. Check if the authoring tool conforms to 11.8.2 to 11.8.5 to the extent that information required for accessibility is supported by the format used for the output of the authoring tool. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |
| NOTE: Where the output format of the authoring tool does not support certain types of information required for accessibility, conformance with requirements that relate to that type of information is not required. | |

#### C.11.8.2 Accessible content creation

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software is an authoring tool. |
| Procedure | 1. Check if the authoring tool has features that enable and guide the production of content that conforms to clauses 9 (Web) and 10 (Non-web documents). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.11.8.3 Preservation of accessibility information in transformations

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection and Testing |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software is an authoring tool.  2. The authoring tool provides restructuring transformations or re-coding transformations. |
| Procedure | 1. For a restructuring transformation, check if the accessibility information is preserved in the output.  2. For a restructuring transformation, check if the content technology supports accessibility information for the restructured form of the information.  3. For a re-coding transformation, check if the accessibility information is preserved in the output.  4. For a re-coding transformation, check if the accessibility information is supported by the technology of the re-coded output. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true or checks 1 and 2 are false or check 3 is true or checks 3 and 4 are false  Fail: Check 1 is false and check 2 is true |

#### C.11.8.4 Repair assistance

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software is an authoring tool.  2. The accessibility checking functionality of the authoring tool can detect that content does not meet a requirement of clauses 9 (Web) or 10 (Non-web documents) as applicable. |
| Procedure | 1. The authoring tool provides repair suggestions when content does not meet a requirement of clauses 9 or 10 (as applicable). |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.11.8.5 Templates

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The software is an authoring tool.  2. The authoring tool provides templates. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the authoring tool provides at least one template that supports the creation of content that conforms to requirements of clauses 9 (Web content) or 10 (Documents) as applicable.  2. Check that at least one template identified in step 1 is available and is identified as conforming to clauses 9 or 10 (as applicable). |
| Result | Pass: Checks 1 and 2 are true  Fail: Check 1 or 2 is false |
| NOTE: The identification as conforming to the requirements of clauses 9 or 10 (as applicable) described in check 2 may be described in terms such as "Conformant to WCAG 2.1". Where the identification does not explicitly state that all of the requirements identified in clauses 9 or 10 (as appropriate) are covered, it may be necessary to use the template to create a web site or document and then test that web site or document according to the requirements of clauses 9 or 10 to provide full assurance that the template behaves as required. | |

## C.12 Documentation and support services

### C.12.1 Product documentation

#### C.12.1.1 Accessibility and compatibility features

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. Product documentation is supplied with the ICT. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that product documentation provided with the ICT lists and explains how to use the accessibility and compatibility features of the ICT. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.12.1.2 Accessible documentation

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. Product documentation in electronic format is supplied with the ICT. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that product documentation in electronic format provided with the ICT conforms to the requirements of clauses 9 or 10 as appropriate. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.12.2 Support services

#### C.12.2.1 General

Clause 12.2.1 is informative only and contains no requirements requiring test.

#### C.12.2.2 Information on accessibility and compatibility features

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. ICT support services are provided. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the ICT support services provide information on the accessibility and compatibility features that are included in the product documentation. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.12.2.3 Effective communication

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. ICT support services are provided. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the ICT support services accommodate the communication needs of individuals with disabilities either directly or through a referral point. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |
| NOTE: The provision of any level of support for the communication needs of individuals with disabilities constitutes a pass of this requirement. Suppliers may wish to provide further information about the level of support that is provided to enable the adequacy and quality of the support to be judged. | |

#### C.12.2.4 Accessible documentation

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. Documentation is provided by the ICT support services. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that documentation in electronic format provided by the ICT support services conforms to the requirements of clauses 9 or 10 as appropriate. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

## C.13 ICT providing relay or emergency service access

### C.13.1 Relay service requirements

#### C.13.1.1 General

Clause 13.1.1 is informative only and contains no requirements requiring test.

#### C.13.1.2 Text relay services

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The service is a text relay service. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the service enables text users and speech users to interact by providing conversion between the two modes of communication. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.13.1.3 Sign relay services

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The service is a sign relay service. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the service enables sign language users and speech users to interact by providing conversion between the two modes of communication. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.13.1.4 Lip-reading relay services

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The service is a lip-reading relay service. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the service enables lip-readers and voice telephone users to interact by providing conversion between the two modes of communication. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.13.1.5 Captioned telephony services

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The service is a captioned telephony service. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the service assists a deaf or hard of hearing user in a spoken dialogue by providing text captions translating the incoming part of the conversation. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

#### C.13.1.6 Speech to speech relay services

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The service is a speech to speech relay service. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the service enables enable speech or cognitively impaired telephone users and any other user to communicate by providing assistance between them. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.13.2 Access to relay services

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT system supports two-way communication.  2. A set of relay services for two-way communication is specified. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the system does not prevent access to those relay services for incoming and outgoing calls. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

### C.13.3 Access to emergency services

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type of assessment | Inspection |
| Pre-conditions | 1. The ICT system supports two-way communication.  2. A set of emergency services for two-way communication is specified. |
| Procedure | 1. Check that the system does not prevent access to those emergency services for outgoing and incoming calls. |
| Result | Pass: Check 1 is true  Fail: Check 1 is false |

# Annex D (informative): Going beyond EN 301 549 requirements - WCAG AAA and other resources

## D.1 WCAG 2.1 AAA Success Criteria

Table D.1 lists the Level AAA Success Criteria from the W3C Web Content Accessibility Guidelines (WCAG 2.1) [5]. Level AAA Success Criteria that, when it is possible to apply them, may provide access beyond that required in the present document.

Table D.1: WCAG 2.1 Level AAA Success Criteria

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| No. | Guideline | Success Criterion Number | Success Criteria Name |
| 1 | Time-based media | [1.2.6](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#sign-language-prerecorded) | [Sign Language (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#sign-language-prerecorded) |
| 2 | Time-based media | [1.2.7](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#extended-audio-description-prerecorded) | [Extended Audio Description (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#extended-audio-description-prerecorded) |
| 3 | Time-based media | [1.2.8](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#media-alternative-prerecorded) | [Media Alternative (Prerecorded)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#media-alternative-prerecorded) |
| 4 | Time-based media | [1.2.9](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-only-live) | [Audio-only (Live)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#audio-only-live) |
| 5 | Adaptable | [1.3.6](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#identify-purpose) | [Identify Purpose](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#identify-purpose) |
| 6 | Distinguishable | [1.4.6](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#contrast-enhanced) | [Contrast (Enhanced)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#contrast-enhanced) |
| 7 | Distinguishable | [1.4.7](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#low-or-no-background-audio) | [Low or No Background Audio](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#low-or-no-background-audio) |
| 8 | Distinguishable | [1.4.8](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#visual-presentation) | [Visual Presentation](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#visual-presentation) |
| 9 | Distinguishable | [1.4.9](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#images-of-text-no-exception) | [Images of Text (No Exception)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#images-of-text-no-exception) |
| 10 | Keyboard Accessible | [2.1.3](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#keyboard-no-exception) | [Keyboard (No Exception)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#keyboard-no-exception) |
| 11 | Enough time | [2.2.3](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#no-timing) | [No Timing](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#no-timing) |
| 12 | Enough time | [2.2.4](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#interruptions) | [Interruptions](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#interruptions) |
| 13 | Enough time | [2.2.5](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#re-authenticating) | [Re-authenticating](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#re-authenticating) |
| 14 | Enough time | [2.2.6](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#timeouts) | [Timeouts](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#timeouts) |
| 15 | Seizures and physical reactions | [2.3.2](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#three-flashes) | [Three Flashes](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#three-flashes) |
| 16 | Seizures and physical reactions | [2.3.3](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#animation-from-interactions) | [Animation form Interactions](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#animation-from-interactions) |
| 17 | Navigable | [2.4.8](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#location) | [Location](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#location) |
| 18 | Navigable | [2.4.9](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#link-purpose-link-only) | [Link Purpose (Link Only)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#link-purpose-link-only) |
| 19 | Navigable | [2.4.10](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#section-headings) | [Section Headings](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#section-headings) |
| 20 | Input modalities | [2.5.5](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#target-size) | [Target Size](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#target-size) |
| 21 | Input modalities | [2.5.6](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#concurrent-input-mechanisms) | [Concurrent Input Mechanisms](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#concurrent-input-mechanisms) |
| 22 | Readable | [3.1.3](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#unusual-words) | [Unusual Words](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#unusual-words) |
| 23 | Readable | [3.1.4](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#abbreviations) | [Abbreviations](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#abbreviations) |
| 24 | Readable | [3.1.5](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#reading-level) | [Reading Level](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#reading-level) |
| 25 | Readable | [3.1.6](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#pronunciation) | [Pronunciation](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#pronunciation) |
| 26 | Predictable | [3.2.5](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#change-on-request) | [Change on Request](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#change-on-request) |
| 27 | Input assistance | [3.3.5](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#help) | [Help](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#help) |
| 28 | Input assistance | [3.3.6](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#error-prevention-all) | [Error Prevention (All)](https://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG21/#error-prevention-all) |

## D.2 Further resources for cognitive accessibility

The diverse accessibility needs and preferences of people with cognitive and learning disabilities are evident and there is a need for further guidelines and standards. The W3C Web Accessibility Initiative (WAI) is undertaking many efforts to improve the requirements and technical guidance for developers, to better address accessibility for people with cognitive and learning disabilities on the Web. Current W3C activity in this area can be found at <https://www.w3.org/WAI/cognitive/>.

# Annex E (informative): Guidance for users of the present document

## E.1 Introduction (informative)

This explanatory annex is meant to support users of the EN 301 549 standard who are new to accessibility, or new to understanding a technical standard. It aims to give you as a reader a helping hand in how to make most use of it.

The standard was originally intended for procurement purposes, but the current version also contains the minimum requirements of the European Web Accessibility Directive (Directive 2016/2102).

The EN301549 contains a wide range of requirements to cover a variety of ICT solutions. There are for example requirements on function, physical characteristics and software. No matter if you are responsible for procuring, testing, planning, maintaining or reporting on accessibility, it is important to understand which requirements are relevant for a specific product or service in a specific situation or context.

Testing for accessibility requirements does not always result in a yes or no. Sometimes, you end up in a grey zone where it is equally important to understand the prerequisites and potential alternatives for different user groups. Remember that accessibility has to do with humans.

The examples mentioned in this annex are only inspirational and the standard can of course be used in many different ways and settings.

## E.2 Overview

This standard consists of fourteen chapters, formally called clauses, and five annexes.

**Chapters 0-3** contain background information, the scope of the standard, links to references, definitions of terminology and explanations of abbreviations. These chapters have a lot of valuable information, but it can be hard to read the standard from A to Z.

**Chapter 4** covers user needs, formally called functional performance statements. The chapter explains what functionality is needed to enable users to locate, identify and operate functions in technology, no matter of their abilities. This is an important chapter where you can learn about what challenges accessibility requirements aim to solve.

**Chapters 5-13** are the actual technical requirements. Most readers start here, but chapter 4 can possibly be a better place to begin, to really understand how to use the detailed technical parts.

The technical requirements cover many different kinds of ICT divided into separate chapters, but it is always a good idea to have a look at chapter 5, since this is where the general requirements are.

Chapters 9, 10 and 11 are the ones that are most relevant to the European Web Accessibility Directive. They cover websites, documents and apps. However, requirements from other chapters apply, as listed in the tables in annex A.

**Chapter 14** deals with conformance to EN 301 549 as a whole and to the individual requirements.

**Annex A** describes how the standard relates to the European Web Accessibility Directive. Apart from the minimum requirements in chapter 9, 10 and 11, some of the requirements in chapter 5, 6, 7 and 12 can also be relevant to fulfill the directive, in specific situations. The table in Annex A is showing which ones of the requirements that are important to look at.

**Annex B** describes how the user needs of chapter 4 relate to the technical requirements in chapter 5-13. This is a useful tool that can help you to use the standard in procurement.

**Annex C** describes how you can test that each requirement of the standard is met. The annex does not provide a testing methodology and you still have to know quite a lot about user needs and testing procedures to make use of it.

**Annex D** lists the success criteria for web content from W3C that go beyond the minimum requirements of the Web Accessibility Directive and the Procurement Directive (Directive 2014/24/EU), called level AAA. These can be seen as further recommendations.

**Annex E** is what you are reading right now.

## E.3 Chapter 4

Chapter 4 is in a sense the heart of the standard. The users, with their different needs, are the reason accessibility matters. The user needs are also the reason for each of the requirements in this standard.

Chapter 4 does not include any requirements in itself, just descriptions. This is why some readers do not consider it important. But in reality, it is the other way around: The aim of the whole standard is to ensure that users with the varying abilities described in this chapter can use products and services.

In this chapter, ten types of user needs based on variations of impairments are described, plus privacy. The impairments can be permanent, temporary or situational. Users with multiple impairments might need specific combinations of accessibility solutions. Therefore, it is important to consider all different user needs as well as a combination of them.

The concept behind the standard is to let technology help compensate the challenges that users can have. You can also look at accessibility as alternative ways to use technology. For example: if the user can’t see, technology can provide sound. If the user can’t hear, the technology can provide text. This is what chapter 4 is describing for each user group, in detail.

After reading chapter 4, you will understand the logic of the requirements in the standard much better.

## E.4 How to use the standard

## E.4.1 Self scoping requirements

The requirements in this standard are called self-scoping. This means that they consist of two parts; the first part is a precondition for the second part, which holds the actual requirement. If the first part is true, you need to meet the second part of the requirement. If the first part is **not** true, this means you already meet the requirement.

For example, a requirement saying “Where ICT hardware has speech output, it shall provide […]” can be met in two ways:

* If your product or service provides speech, you need to fulfill the second part of the requirement.
* But if your product or service does not provide speech, you don’t need to think about. The requirement is automatically met.

To meet the standard means that all requirements in the standard is met in one out of these two ways.

To get an overview of the requirements in scope of your product or service, you can focus on the requirements with the same scoping statements. There are online tools that can help you filter out requirements that are automatically met.

### E.4.2 Connection between requirements and user needs

The table in Annex B helps you understand the connection between the requirements and the user needs. There is an instruction on how to use the table under B.2.

But before making a decision about the most suitable solution, you also need to think about the context. Here are some examples:

* In what situation is the solution going to be used?
* Which failed requirements are possible to compensate with other alternatives, like for example a service desk?
* What would it cost to solve an issue with an alternative like that?
* Will the failed requirements be possible to fix in the next version of the solution?

Suppliers may show how their product or service addresses the user needs in chapter 4 in addition to meeting the requirements in chapters 5 to 13. This can help you choose which product or service is most suitable.

## E.5 The European Web Accessibility Directive

The European Web Accessibility Directive (Directive 2016/2102) is a minimum harmonisation directive. This means that all EU member states and EFTA countries must at least comply with the minimum requirements refered to in the directive. Each country can choose to go beyond these requirements in their national legislation when it comes to both requirements and scope.

The directive covers, as a minimum, public sector agencies and some government owned, funded or led organisations.

NOTE: The definition of public sector body is referring to the Procurement Directive (Directive 2014/24/EU) article 2(1) point 4 “bodies governed by public law” means bodies that have all of the following characteristics:

* they are established for the specific purpose of meeting needs in the general interest, not having an industrial or commercial character;
* they have legal personality; and
* they are financed, for the most part, by the State, regional or local authorities, or by other bodies governed by public law; or are subject to management supervision by those authorities or bodies; or have an administrative, managerial or supervisory board, more than half of whose members are appointed by the State, regional or local authorities, or by other bodies governed by public law.

Chapters 9, 10 and 11 are the ones that are most relevant to the European Web Accessibility Directive. They cover websites, documents and apps. However, requirements from other chapters apply, as listed in the tables in annex A. The directive also covers intranets and extranets, which are to meet the requirements of chapter 9 for web content and chapter 10 for documents.

There are different grace periods for different kinds of content and there are also exceptions to what content is covered by the directive. For example, live video is not covered by the directive. This means that requirements 9.1.2.4 for websites, 10.1.2.4 for documents and 11.1.2.4 for apps are not relevant to meeting the requirements of the directive.

Please note that there are also other requirements in the directive, for example on monitoring and accessibility statements. These are not covered in EN 301 549.

## E.6 Annex D: Going beyond EN 301 549 requirements

### E.6.1 Annex D.1: WCAG 2.1 AAA

If you aim for a higher level of accessibility than the minimum requirements of the Web Accessibility Directive and the Procurement Directive, table D.1 can be used for inspiration. It lists additional success criteria published by the World Wide Web Consortium, W3C, that may be useful to take into consideration while procuring, designing or developing solutions that aim to reach as many user groups as possible. Some of these criteria can be considered best practise or recommendations close to usability.

### E.6.2 Annex D.2: Further resources for cognitive accessibility

Annex D provides a link to W3C resources that can be used as guidance to improve the inclusion of accessibility for people with cognitive and learning disabilities when using ICT products and services.

# History

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Document history** | | |
| V1.1.1 | February 2014 | Publication |
| V.1.1.2 | April 2015 | Publication |
| V2.1.1 | February 2018 | EN Approval Procedure AP 20180514: 2018-02-13 to 2018-05-14 |
| V2.1.2 | June 2018 | Vote V20180824: 2018-06-25 to 2018-08-24 |
| V2.1.2 | August 2018 | Publication |
| V3.1  Draft 1.1 | 30/Aug/18 | Edits to 3, 6.2, 6.3, 8.3, A2, B2, C6, C8.3, E |
| Draft 2.4 | 29/Oct/18 | Edits to many sections in response to comments received. Use <review> <show markup> <specific people> to display changes in versions |
| Draft 3.1 | 28/Dec/18 | Edits to many sections in response to comments received. Use <review> <show markup> <specific people> to display changes in versions |
| Draft 3.2 | 31/Dec/18 | Annex C updated to better align with current content of the other clauses |
| V3.1.1  Draft 3.5 | 10/Jan/19 | Updates to many sections in response to comments, addition of clause 14 and Annex E.  Use <review> <show markup> <specific people> to display changes in versions. |
| V3.1.1  Draft 4.5 | 4/Mar/19 | Updates to many sections in response to comments and STF review.  Use <review> <show markup> <specific people> to display changes in particular versions. |
| V3.1.1  Draft 5.0 | 21/Mar/2019 | Updates to many sections in response to TC HF review.  Use <review> <show markup> <Dave: draft v4.5 to v5.0> to display changes from draft 4.5 to draft 5.0. |